

**The birth of mankynde, otherwyse named the womans booke / Newly set forth, corrected, and augmented. Whose contentes ye may reade in the table of the booke, and most plainly in the prologue. By Thomas Raynalde physition.**

### **Contributors**

Rösslin, Eucharius, -1526.

Raynalde, Thomas, active 1540-1551.

### **Publication/Creation**

London : Printed by R[ichard] I[ugge], 1565 [i.e. 1572?]

### **Persistent URL**

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/g9uhbqqn>

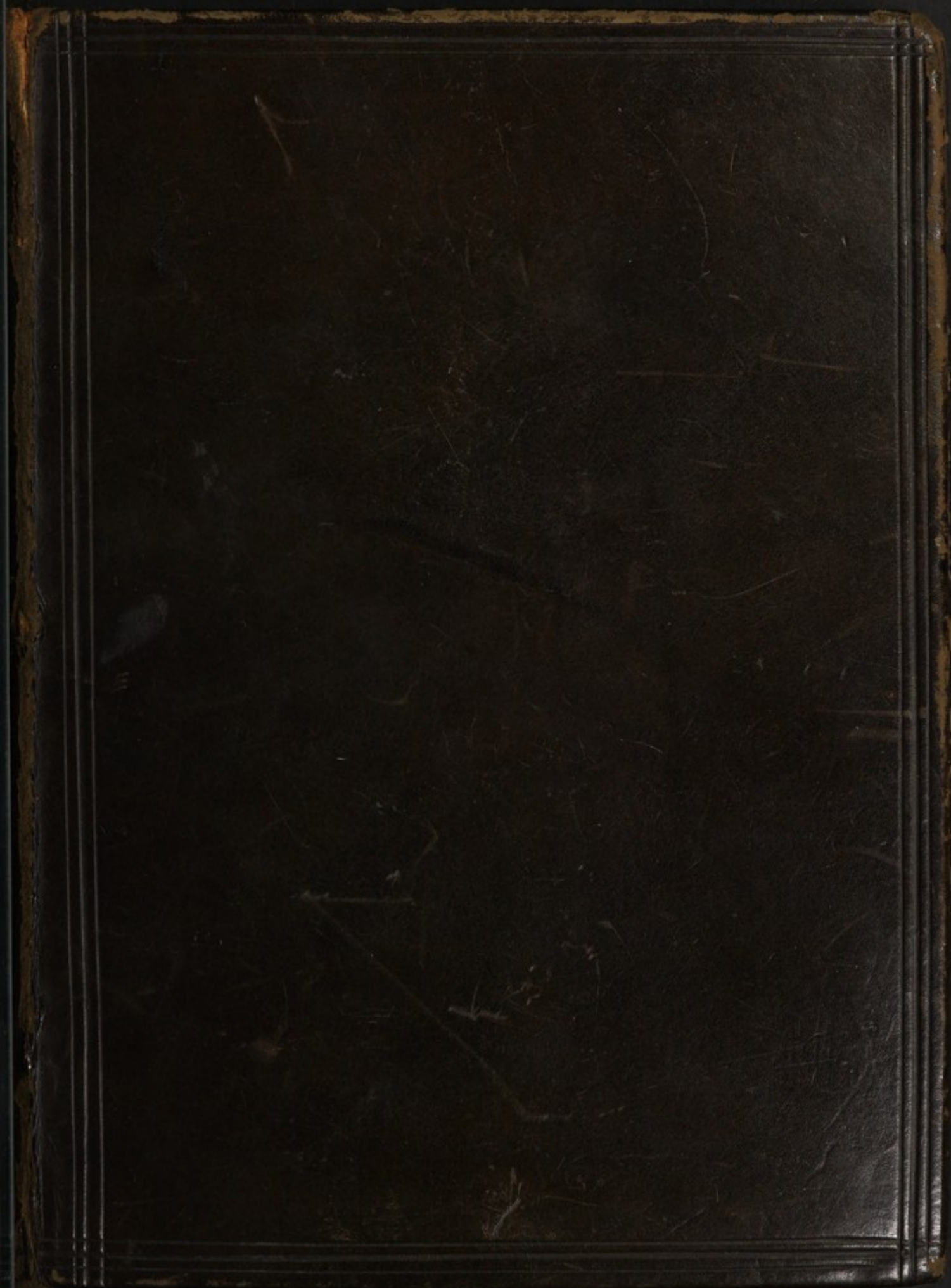
### **License and attribution**

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.

**wellcome  
collection**

Wellcome Collection  
183 Euston Road  
London NW1 2BE UK  
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722  
E [library@wellcomecollection.org](mailto:library@wellcomecollection.org)  
<https://wellcomecollection.org>



RAYNALE  
BIRTH OF  
MANKYNDE







5513/B

W. 3

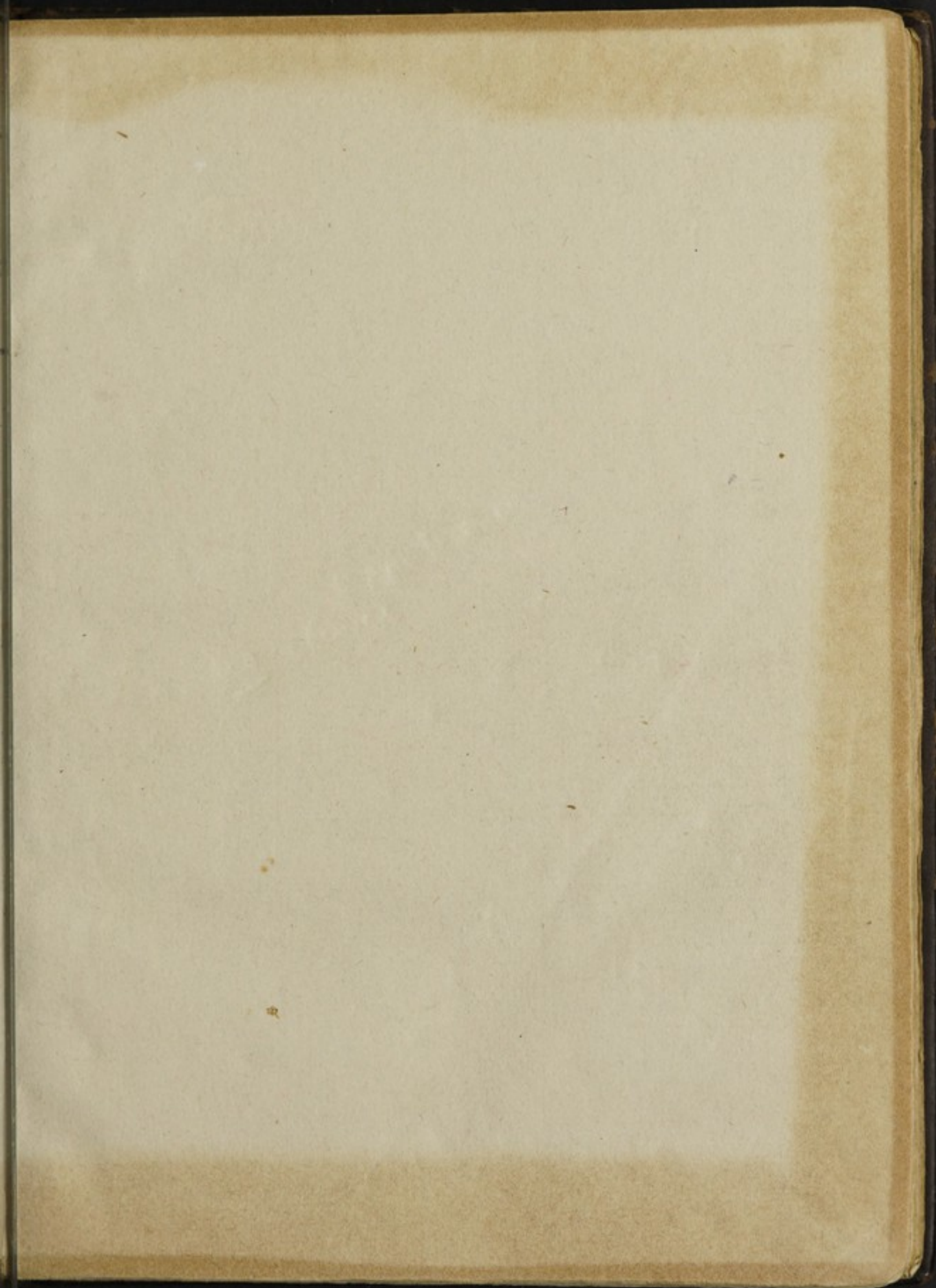
J. xxiii. Roe

[STC 21158 var.]

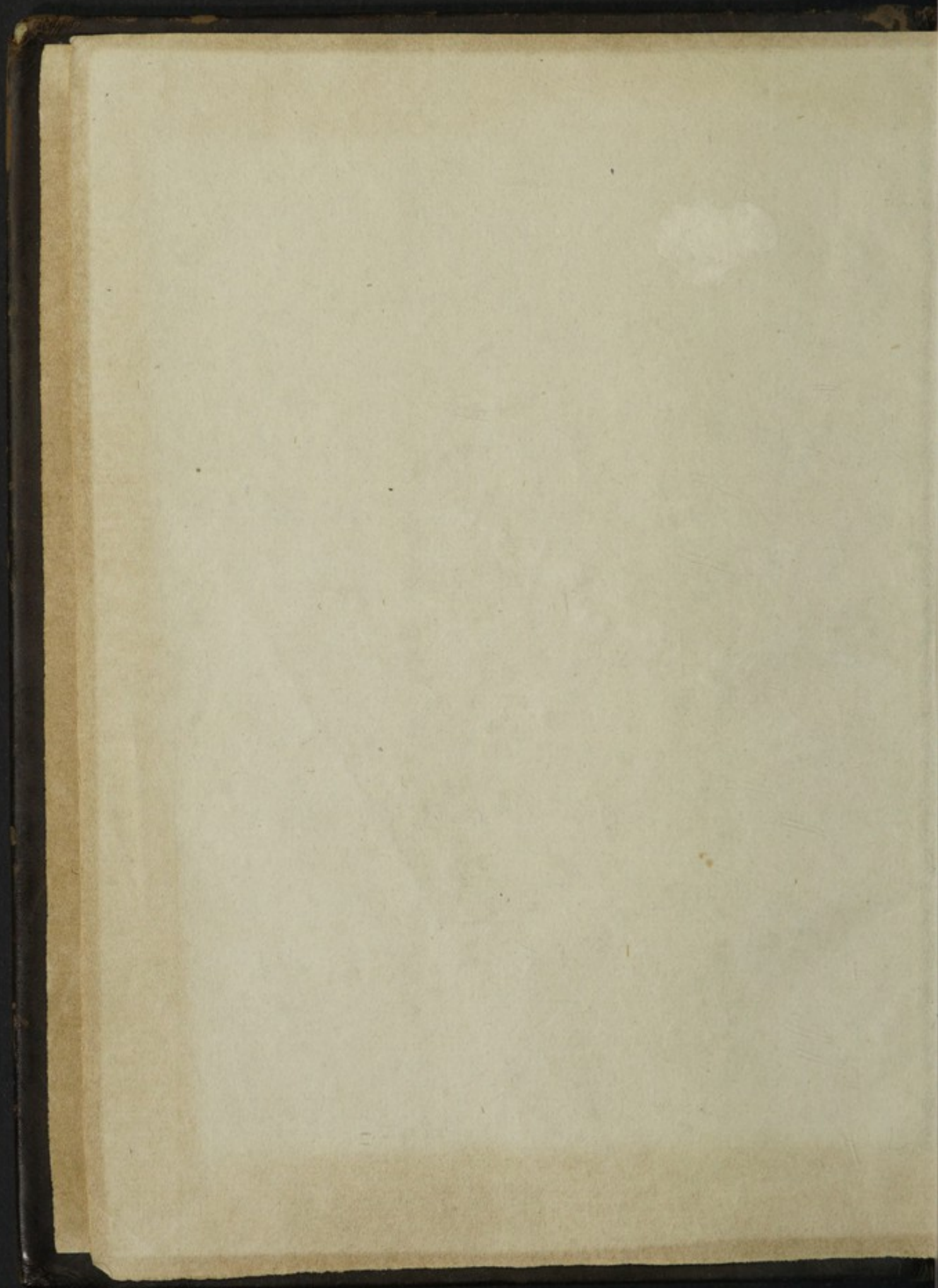
Dated 1565 at end but a different typesetting from 5512 (except for sig. A). NO printer's device at end. Marginal notes throughout in larger type than 5512.

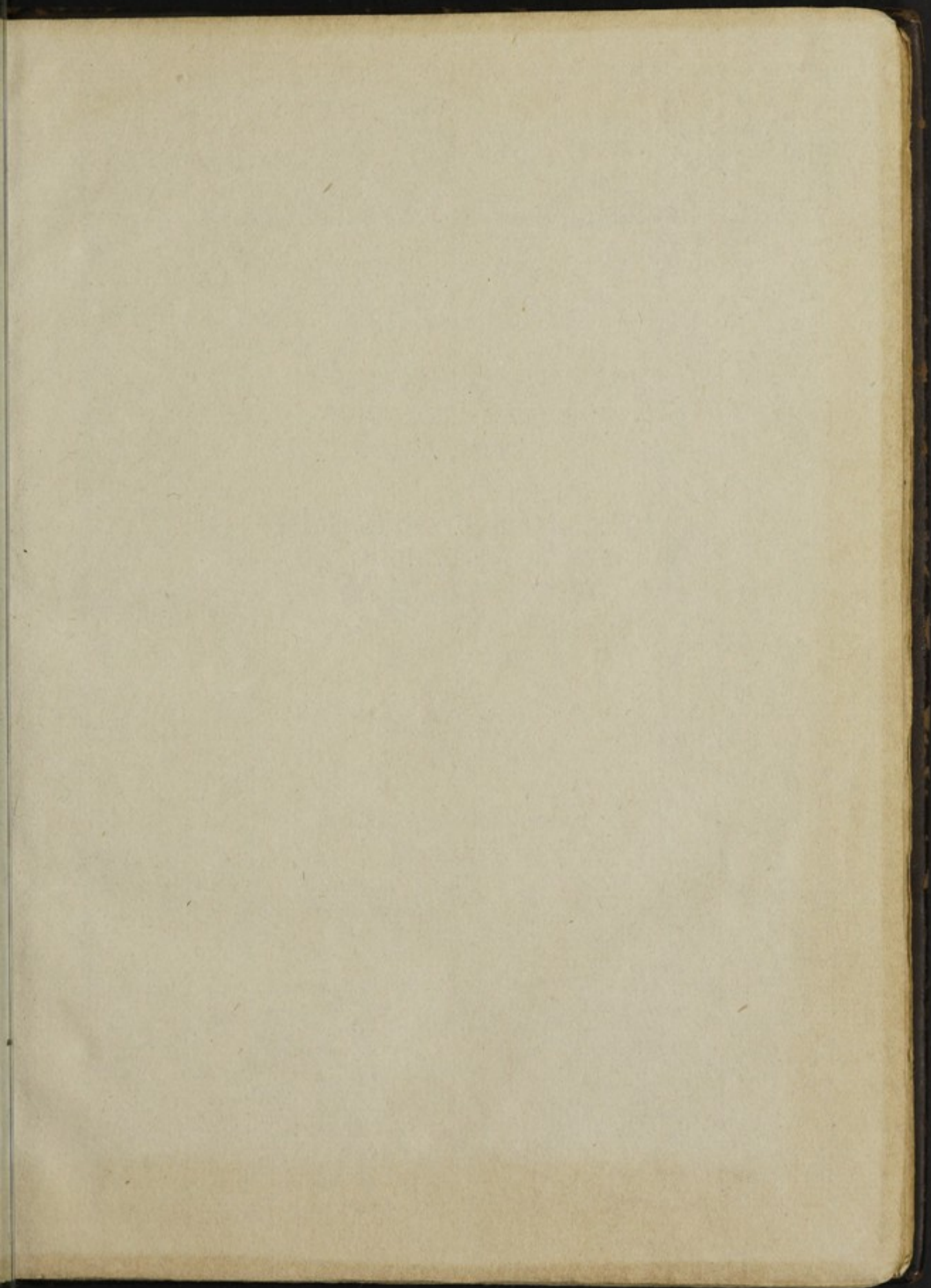
catchword B6r 'comfort'

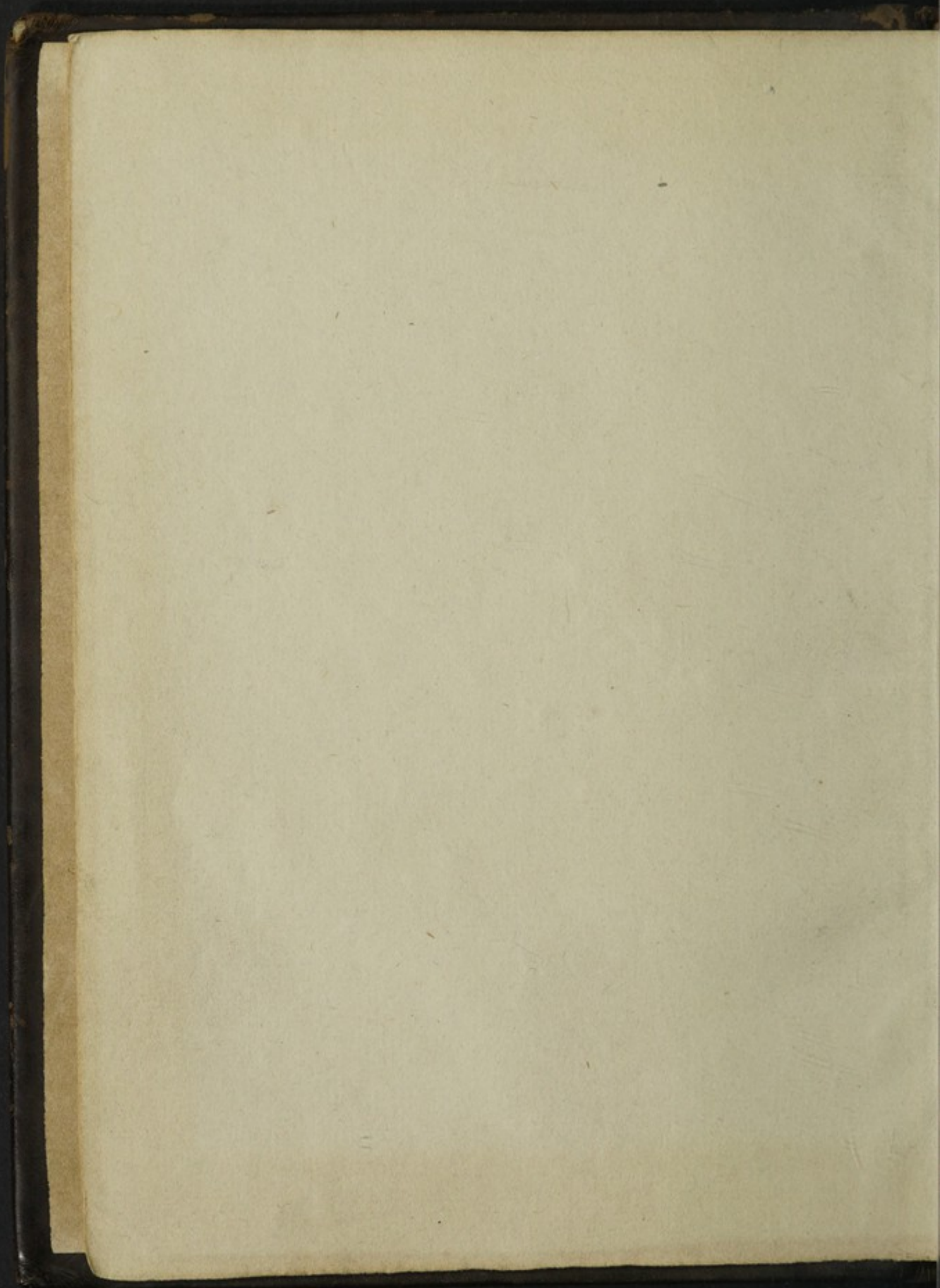
Anatomical illus. wanting.













**The Birth**  
of mankynde, other=  
wyle named the wo=  
mans booke.

Newly set foorth, corrected, and  
augmented. Whose con=  
tentes ye may reade in  
the Table of the  
booke, and  
most  
plainely in the  
prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde  
Phisition,





E be it some Ari-  
 starchus may per-  
 happes find some  
 lacke of faithful-  
 nes & diligence in  
 this woorke: yet  
 there is none so  
 froward to deny,  
 but that there is  
 some fruite & pro-  
 fite to be founde  
 therein, seeyng  
 that it commeth

nowe abrode much more enlarged & encreased, &  
 more diligently corrected then it was before ey-  
 ther in the Latine or in the English. And where  
 before in the other printes, there lacked matter  
 necessarie to the openyng and declaration of the  
 fygyres parteyning to the inner parts: it is now  
 so playnely set forth, that the simplest mydwyfe  
 which can reade, may both vnderstande for her  
 better instruction, & also other women that have  
 need of her helpe, the more commoditie. Where-  
 fore my desyre is, that it may be receyued and  
 practised of mydwyues and all other ma-  
 trones, with no lesse successe, then it  
 is with good wyll and desyre

wrytten to pro-

fite,

and to do good  
to other.



The Table of this present Booke.



First, a Prologue  
to the women  
readers.

In this .i. Cha-  
piter is briefly  
declared the con-  
tentes of the  
first Booke.

Capit. i.

In howe many  
coates the bo-  
dy is lapped or  
inuolued Cap.

fol. i.

ii.  
Here is declared what the Muskles be. Cap. iii.

fol. iiii.

Of the Kell, called Peritoneum. Cap. iiii.

fol. v.

The declaration of the names and nature of  
the Matrix. Cap. v. fol. vi.

Of the wombe & his partes. Cap. vi. fol. vii.

Of the mother port. Cap. vii. fol. x.

Of the vesselles of seede, called the stones, with  
other thereto apparteynyng. Cap. viii.

fol. xi.

Of the seede byngers. Cap. ix. eodem.

Of the office and vse of these seede byngers.

Cap. x.

fol. xiiii.

Of the way by the whiche the seede is sent from  
the stones, to the angles or corners of the ma-  
trix. Cap. xi. fol. xix.

Here is declared the situation of the bladder in  
women. Cap. xii. fol. xxi.

733/3

## The Table.

Of the baines which resort to the Matrix, and the partes thereof. Item of the Termes and theyr course, with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii. fol. xliiii.

Of the three calls or wrappers wherein the Infanc is lapped. Cap. xiiii. fol. xlix.

Which of the three Matrix baines containe the Termes, and how the milke commeth to the womans breastes. Cap. xv. fol. xxxv.

The declaration by letters of the figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye euery part in woman mentioned in this booke before.

Of the fyrst figure. fol. xlii.

Of the seconde figure. fol. xlii.

Of the thirde figure. fol. xliii.

The fourth figure. fol. xliiii.

The fyfth figure. fol. xliii.

The syrth figure. eodem.

The. vii. viii. and. ix. figures. fol. l.

## The Table of the seconde Booke.



Of the tyme of birth, and which is called natural or vnatural. Cap. i. fol. li.

Of easy and vneasy, difficult, or dolorous deliuerance, & the causes of it, with the signes howe to know & foresee the

same. Cap. ii. fol. liii.

Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue harde

## The Table.

- harde labour. Cap. iiii. fol. lvi.  
Remedies and medicines by the whiche the labour may be made tollerable, easie, and without great payne. Cap. iiii. fol. lxxv.  
Howe the secondine or seconde byrth shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come not freely of his owne kynde. Cap. v. fol. lxxvi.  
Howe many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, & how to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the same. Cap. vi. fol. lxxviii.  
Of aborcementes or vntimely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen, & eased. Cap. vii. fol. lxxxii.  
Of dead birthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix. fol. xc.  
In the last Chapter of this booke be breefly resited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the cheefe purpose enteded in this present booke. Cap. x. fol. xcvi.

### The thyrde Booke.



In this fyrst Chapter of this third booke is fyrst declared the matters therein contained, & then how the infant newly borne must be handled, nourished, and looked to. Cap. i. folio. xcviij.  
A iij Of



## The Table.

Of the Nurse, and her mylke, and how long the chylde shoulde sucke. Capit. ii.	Fol. C.
Of diuers diseases & infirmities which chaunce to children lately borne, and the remedies therfore. Cap. iii.	Fol. Ciii.
Of the fluxe and ouermuch loosenes of the belly Chapt. iiii.	Fol. Ciiii.
To vnloose the chylde, being bounde.	Fol. Cv.
Remedie for the cough and distillation or catarthes of the head.	Fol. Cvi.
Remedie for short wynde.	Fol. Cvii.
Agaynst wheales or bladders on the tong eode.	
Of exulceration or clefture, chapping or chynnyng of the mouth.	Fol. Cviii.
Of apostumation and runnyng of the eares.	Fol. eodem
Of apostumation in the head.	Fol. Cix.
Of the swellng or bolning of the eyes.	eodem.
Of the scumme or whyte of the eye.	eodem.
Agaynst immoderate heate of the feuer.	eodem.
Agaynst frettyng or gnawng in the belly.	
Folio. Cr.	
Agaynst swelling of the body.	eodem.
Agaynst often sneesyng.	eodem.
Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.	Fol. Cxi.
Agaynst swelling of the coddess.	eodem.
Agaynst swelling of the Naupill.	eodem.
Agaynst vnslleepnesse.	Fol. Cxii.
Agaynst peyng or the hychate.	eodem.
Agaynst often parbreakng by weakenesse and feeblenesse of the stomacke.	Fol. Cxiii.
Agaynst fearful & terrible dreames.	Fol. Cxiiii.
	Agaynst

## The Table.

Agaynst issuing forth of the fundement gutte.	
Folio.	eodem.
Agaynst Tenasmus.	eodem.
Agaynst wormes in the belly.	eodem.
Of chafyng or gallyng of any place of the bodye.	
Fol.	Cxvi.
Of the falling sicknesse.	eodem.
Consumption or pynning away of the body.	
Fol.	Cxvii.
Of lassitude, wearinesse, or heauinesse of the chylde's body.	eodem.
Of trembling of the body, or of certaine members of the body, called the palsy.	Fol. Cxviii.
Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stopping of the vrine.	
Of gogle eyes, or looking a squint.	Fol. Cxix.

### The fourth booke.



Cap. iiii.

If suche thynges the whiche shalbe entreated of in this fourth booke. Cap. i. fol. cxx. Of conception, & how many wayes it may be hindzed or letted. Cap. ii. fol. eodem. Howe many wayes conception may be letted, & how the causes may be knowen.

Fol. Cxxi.  
Howe

## The Table.

- Howe to knowe whether lacke of conception be  
of the woman oz of the man, and howe it may  
be perceiued whether she be conceaued oz no.  
Cap. iiii. fol. Cxxiii.
- Of certayne remedies and medicines whiche  
may further the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.  
fol. Cxxiiii.
- Of diuers bellifying receiptes. fol. Cxxv.
- Of the causes and remedies for dandruffe of the  
head. fol. Cxxvi.
- To take away heere from places where it is un-  
seemly. fol. Cxxvii.
- To do away frekens oz other spottes in the face.  
fol. Cxxviii.
- To destroy wartes and suche lyke excrescens on  
the face, oz els where. eodem.
- To cleare and claryfy the skynne in the handes,  
face, oz other part of the body. fol. eodem.
- To souple and molifie the ruggednesse of the  
skynne. fol. Cxxx.
- Agaynst sodayne rysynges of pynples through  
vnhind heate in the face, oz els where. eodem.
- To keepe and preserue the teeth cleane. eodem.
- Of stinkyng breath. fol. eodem.
- Of the ranke sauour of the armeholes. eodem.

¶ Here endeth the Table.

# A Prologue to the women readers.



Erre in the begynnynge of this presente Prologue, I wyl folowe the example of them, whiche when they byd any ghestes to dyner or supper, are wont fyrst to declare, what shall be their cheare, what fare, and howe manye dishes they shall haue, prayng them to take it in good worth, and to looke for neither better ne worse then hath ben mentioned of: And euen so here wyl I do. Before that ye enter into the readyng of this litle treatise, I shall succinctly & in fewe wordes recite the summe and cheefe contentes of the same, with the vtilitie and profite whiche may ensue to the diligent and attentife ouerreader thereof, to the ende that ye of these thinges beyng first well aduertised, may haue the more or lesse courage to employ your labour in ouerlokyng and perusing of the same. For commonly it doth occasionate anye man to be the more prompt, redy, and wylling to take payne, when he is assured or certified of the profite, purpose, and fruite thereof comming, and lykewylse it is a great prycke or allurement, entising and mouing a man to reade any booke, when he is somewhat first admonished of the matters comprehended and contayned therein.

The entent  
of thaurtoure

Wherefore nowe to come to our purpose, ye

Bi

shall

## The prologue.

The more  
part of this  
booke tran-  
slated into  
Englishe  
three or  
four yeres  
past.

The name  
of this booke.

shall vnderstande that about thre or foure yeres  
past, a certayne studious and diligent clarke,  
at the requeste and desyre of dyuers honest and  
sadde matrones, beyng of his acquayntaunce,  
dyd translate out of Latine into Englyshe a great  
parte of this booke, entiteling it accordyng to  
the Latine inscription De partu hominis, that  
is to saye, Of the byrth of mankynde: whiche we  
nowe do name, The womans booke: for so  
muche as the most part, or well neare all there-  
in entreated of, doth concerne and touche onely  
women: In whiche his translation he varied  
or declined nothyng at all from the steppes of  
his Latine aucthour, obseruyng more fidelitie  
in translatyng, then choise or discretion at that  
tyme in admitting and allowyng manye thinges  
in the same booke, greatly needyng admonition  
and wary aduise or counsell to the readers, which  
other wyse myght sometimes vse that for a helpe,  
the whiche should turne to a hinderaunce. Where-  
fore I reuoluyng and earnestly reuysyng from  
top to toe the sayde booke, and here withall consy-  
dering the manifolde vtilitie and profite whiche  
thereby mought ensue to all women (as tou-  
chyng that purpose) yf it were more narrowly  
looked ouer, and with a strayghter iudgement  
more exactly euerye thyng therein pondred and  
tryed, thought my labour and paynes shoulde  
not be euyl employed, ne vnthankfully accep-  
ted and receaued of all honest, discrete and sage  
women, yf I after good and diligent perusing  
thereof, dyd correct and amende suche faultes in  
it,

## The Prologue.

it, as seemed worthe of the same, and to aduise the readers what thinges were good, or intollerable to be vsed, whiche were daungerous, and whiche were vtterlie to be exchued. The which thing I haue not onlye so done, but ouer this, haue thereunto adioyned and annexed dyuers other more experimented and more familiar medicines. And farther haue in the fyrst booke set foorth, and evidently declared, all the inward partes of women (suche as were necessarye to be knowen to our purpose) and that not onlye in wordes, but also in liuely and expresse figures, by the whiche euery part before in the booke described, maye in maner be as exactly and clearely perceaued, as though ye were present at the cutting open of Anothomie of a dead woman.

And thynke not the vtilitie and profite of this fyrst booke, and knowledge thereof to be litle or of small value, but take it as the foundation and grounde, by the perceyuerance whereof, your wittes and vnderstandyng shalbe illuminate and lyghtened, the better to vnderstande, howe euerye thyng cometh to passe within your bodies in tyme of conception, of bearyng, and of byrth. And farther, by the perfect knowledge of this booke, ye shall clearely perceauie the reason of manye diseases whiche happen peculiarlye to women, and the causes thereof, by whiche perceyuerance, agayne ye shall haue the readyer vnderstandyng howe to withstand & remedie the sayde infirmities or diseases. For note ye well, that as there is no man whatsoever he be,

Many thinges annexed & newly added to this booke.

The contentes of the first booke.

Howe profitable & first booke is.

The vtilitie of the perfect knowledge of Anothomie.

## The prologue.

shall become an absolute and perfect Physitian, vnlesse he haue an absolute and perfect knowledg of all the inwardes and outwardes of mans and womans body: euen so shall ye neuer groundlye vnderstande the matters contayned in the seconde booke, or anye other communication, or writing, touchyng the same intent, except ye first haue true and iust cognoissance in the fyrt booke. Agayne when that a woman commeth to a Physitian for counsell, concernyng somethyng that maye be amisse in the parte: the aunswere of the Physitian and reasonable allegation of causes to the same infirmitie, is manye tymes obscure, darke, and straunge, to be comprehended by the woman, for lacke of due knowledg of the situation, maner, and fashion of the inwardes. And truely when a person is sicke or diseased in anye part, it is halfe a comfort, yea halfe his health to vnderstand in what part the disease is, and howe that parte lyeth in the bodye. This knowledg also ministreth yet a farther ingin and policie to inuent infinitelye the better howe the medicine shoulde be applyed, & after the most profitable sort ministred and set to the diseased plot. To be short, all the wittines and artificiall craftie inuention, and diuers maners of ministrations in the noble science of Physicke, procedeth and springeth of the profounde knowledg of Anothomie. Therefore mine aduise & vtter counsel is, that al women in whose handes this litle booke shall chaunce to come, with all diligence do force them selues perfectly to the vnderstandyng of this fyrt booke:

wey

The coun-  
sayle of the  
auctour to  
the readers.

## The Prologue.

well assuring them that they shall not repent them of their small paynes bestowed . . . at behalfe . And to the ende that euery thing might be the playner and moze easye to attayne vnto, I haue at the latter ende of the foresayd fyrst booke, set the figures whiche represent suche matters as were entreated of in the booke before, and also haue therto annexed a sufficient declaration and exposition by letters, of all partes and parcels conteyned in the sayde figures.

In the seconde booke we shall declare the diuers sortes and maners of the deliuerance or byrth of mankynde, and all the daungers, perils, and other cases happening to the labouryng woman at that season, with remedyes and manyfolde medicines concernyng the same, where also we haue not omitted ne left out anye medicine beyng fyrst in the olde booke, but haue in manye places rectified and amended the same, accordyng to reason and the lawes of phisicke: and besides this, haue added thereto diuers other salutarie and effectuall medicines, suche as eyther I my selfe or other Phisitions beyng yet alyue at this day, haue experimented and practised. Furthermore, in this seconde booke ye may finde diuers remedies whereby to prouoke the termes or flowres (when that needeth) or to restrayne or stoppe the same when they issue moze largely then nature doth require, with many other matters, to long here to be rehearsed.

In the thirde booke shalbe entreated, of the election and choyle, by certayne signes and to-

The conten-  
tes of the se-  
cond booke.

Many truely experi-  
mented medicines ad-  
ded to this  
booke.

Things  
entreated of  
in the thirde  
booke.



## The prologue.

hers of a good Nurse, whiche maye foster and  
bryng vp the chyld beynge borne. Item medi-  
cines encreasynge, dimynyshing, attenuatynge,  
engrossynge, and amendynge the mylke in the  
Nurses brestes. Also remedies for manye and  
sundrye diseases, whiche oft tymes chaunce vnto  
infantes after their byrth.

What is  
conteyned  
in the fourth  
booke.

In the fourth and last booke, we wyll some-  
what commune of conception, with the causes  
hynderynge or fartherynge the same, shewynge  
certayne counsaile and remedies whereby by  
the grace of God the vnfruitfull maye be made  
more fruitfull, and impedimentes of concepti-  
on, by vertue of medicines, remoued and ouer-  
come, the woman beynge made the more apt to  
conceau. And farther, in this last booke shall  
be vttered and sette forth certayne embellesh-  
ynge receptes, concernynge only honest & health-  
some decoration and clenlynesse, alwayes mooste  
lovable and commendable in a woman, as to  
scoure and clense the head, to cause the heere to  
kepe his naturall colour, to preserue the heere  
from fallynge away, to take away heere from  
certayne places, where beynge it causeth some  
deformitie or vnseemelynesse in a person, to  
subtyle and cleare the skynne in the face or o-  
ther where, to remoue and do awaye spottes,  
freckens, and other suche lyke displeasunt  
markes and tokens, to souple and mollifie the  
skynne beynge rugged and rough, with other  
moe suche lyke matters, to long here to be re-  
heard, the whiche truely are not of anye pru-  
dent

## The Prologue.

dent person to be reiected, improued, or disprayed, forasmuche as I teache nothyng in that place, but that only whiche may make to the honest, comely, and commendable conseruyng and maynteynyng of the inset and naturall beautie in a woman, vtterly abhorryng and defying all fardyng, paintyng, and counterfait cast colours, whiche of some damnable and misproude people be dayly vsed, suche as by all meanes possible seeke and searche more the abominable and deuillish paynting & garish setting forth of their mortall carcases (the better thereby to commend it vnto the eyes of foolish & fonde men) then by honest, sober, debonayre, & gentle maners so to demean their lyfe, that they may thereby rather obtayne the loue, amitie, and heartie perpetuall fauour first of God, & then of all honest, discrete, and godly wyse men. Thus now to be short, I haue in as compendious maner as the matter would suffer, set before your eyes the cheefe and principall contentes comprehended in this little volume. And now remayneth there nothyng els but onely to require the beneuolent fauour and good acceptation of this my labour and paynes spent in the compiling of these foresayde matters, praying, that as it hath ben to me paynefull in the composyng thereof, so it may be both pleasaunt and fruitefull to all women (for whose sake & only respect it is set forth) in the readyng thereof. Howbeit, I am not ignorant ne vnshure that many there are, before whose syght this booke shall finde small grace, and lesse fauour.

Agaynst  
paynting of  
womens faces.

The beneuolence of  
the reader  
required.

## The prologue.

Harde to  
please many  
iudgements

The maner  
of Poets in  
tymes past.

The diffi-  
culty to con-  
eyle y good  
wyl of per-  
uert people.

So harde a thing it is to wyte or endite anye  
matter whatsoeuer it be, that shoulde be able to  
sustayne and abyde the variable iudgement, and  
to obtayne or winne the constant loue and a-  
lo waunce of euerye man, especiallye yf it con-  
teyne in it any noueltie or vnwont strangenes.  
Therefore the auncient Poetes in tymes passed,  
when that they enterprised anye new or straunge  
workes, were wont in the frunt of the same,  
with greate protestation, to inuocate and call  
bpyon all the goddes and goddesses by name, re-  
quiring them fauourably to aspyre, ayde, and  
prosper theyr attempted purpose, to the ende  
that by theyr obteyned fauour, it myght be the  
more acceptable and gracious to all suche as  
shoulde it beholde and reade. Whose example  
ryght necessary and needefull it were that I here  
shoulde deuoutly ensue and folowe, so that I  
coulde first beleue that by suche maner of inuo-  
cation, myght be allured and wonne the bene-  
uolencie and wyllyng fauour of all suche in  
whose handes this present booke shoulde happen  
to fall. But truely I do suppose, that although  
I shoulde call downe all the nine noble Muses  
out of the famous mount of Hellicon, or praye  
to be assistent the thre louyng graces, or great  
Apollo, god, maister, and cheefe inuentour of  
the nature of all hearbes and other medicines:  
or Esculapius cheefe patrone and president in  
the worthye science of Physicke: or wittie Mer-  
curie with his doulce and sugred eloquencie,  
with sweete Suada, goddesse of all perswasion,  
with

## The prologue.

with all other the goddes and goddesses what  
euer they be, in whom ingenious Poetes do  
faigne to be a maiestie, myght, and power, to  
encline the heartes of men for to delyte and take  
pleasure in any suche thyng whiche fyrst shalbe  
by their godhead allowed and fauoured. Though  
(I say) all these shoulde firmely conspyre in one  
together, and bende them vtterly to the moste of  
theyr hygh puissaunce, to sacre, halowe, yea and  
with their holye poeticall spirite to breathe ouer  
this booke, yet shoulde there be founde people  
of so ingrate, straunge, peruers, and waywarde  
wittes, that woulde (without all good reason)  
blame and improue the same vnneth yet seene,  
and muche lesse read. For who be they that geue  
so precipitat and headye iudgements in all ma-  
ner of matters, as suche (for the more parte) the  
whiche therein shall haue leaste cognoissaunce  
or knowledge, and take least payne in reading  
or searchyng the veritie of that thyng agaynste  
the whiche they be moste stoute, doughtie, and  
bolde pronouncers. And this do I not say on-  
lye of them, that peraduenture shall here and  
there in the procelle of this booke fynde any  
perticuler matters to reprove, and carpe, some-  
tymes worthylpe, and sometymes otherwyle:  
but also, yea, and that muche more of them,  
whiche generally without all exception, shall  
condemne and vtterly reprove all the whole  
matter, some alleagyng that it is shame, and  
other some, that it is not meete ne spyryng  
suche

The lyght  
iudgements  
of many mē

Of them  
that vtterly  
do cōdemne  
this booke.

## The prologue.

Answer  
to certayne  
cauillations.

Nothing so  
good but it  
may be abu-  
sed.

suche matters to be entreated of, so playnelye in our mother and bulgare language, to the dishonour (as they say) of womanhead, and the derision of their wont secretes, by the detection and discoueryng whereof, men it readyng or hearyng, shalbe moued thereby the more to abhorre and lothe the companie of women, and farther, in their communications to ieste and bourde of womens priuities, not wont to be known of them, with diuers other such like cauillations and reasons: so that their opinion it is, that it were more expedient and better to suppress and vtterlye to condemne vnto darkenesse for euer this booke, then to sende it forth into lyght. Loe, suche is the lyght iudgement of them, the which in euery thyng, whereof may ensue both good and euyll, haue alwayes theyr eyes walkyng and firmly affixed and directed bypon the euyll, pychyng and choosyng out the worst of euery matter, omitting and leauyng to speake of the beste, as the thyng which were nothyng to their purpose. If euerye thyng in this worlde shoulde be wayed and passed bypon after this sort, then shoulde we be fayne to condemne and banyshe those thynges farre from vs, whiche are at this tyme accompted and taken for the most necessarie, worthie, and of greatest price or estimation. For to be short, there is nothyng vnder heauen so good, but that it maye be peruerted and turned to an euyll vse, by them that be euyll and naught them selues,  
and

## The prologue.

and do abuse it: ne is there any thyng so absolute and perfecte, but by the occasion of the abuse thereof, at one tyme or other, may and doth ensue great daunger and damage to mankynde.

Fyre and water be two ryght necessary elementes to the vie of man, without the whiche we could not lyue: yet by the meanes of them, many a miserable deede hath ben done, and perpetrated. By fyre hath ben consumed and deuoured whole Cities and Countreys. By water, swallowed and drowned infinite men, shippes, yea and whole regions. Agayne, meate and drynke, to the moderate vsers thereof, doth minister and mayntayne lyfe: And contrary, to the vnrreasurable and vnsaciad gourmautes and gluttons, it hath full many thousand times brought surfettes, sicknesse, and at the lasse death. By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurie and violencie of theyr fierce enemies, the true wayfaryng man from the assault of the theefe: Yea and many tymes cleane contrary, by weapons Realmes and Cities be subuerted and vtterlye destroyed, the true mans throte by the theefe cutte. The most holye and sacred Byble teacheth nothyng but holynesse and vertuouus lyuyng, charitie to God and to our neyghbour, reformation of our wicked lyuyng, and bresfelye, the hye waye to GOD. The blessed Sacrament of the altar was instituted and ordeyned by our Saviour Jesus Christe, for a principall, earnest, lyuely, and molte presente consolation and

Fyre & water abused.

Meate and drynke abused.

Weapons abused.

The Bible abused.

The blessed Sacrament may be abused.

comfort

## The prologue.

and comfort of mans conscience, yet both holye Scripture, and also the foresayde holye Sacrament, haue ben, be, and wyll be, the confusion and condemnation of a greate number of the abusers and indigne or vnrworthy receauers of them both. Shoulde men, for the auoydyng all these foresayde inconueniencies, and for the reasons abouesayde, condemne and banny the fyre and water, forsake their meate and drynke, suppress and forbyd all maner of weapons, abolish and set asyde the holye Scripture, denye or vnregarde the blessed Sacrament? No, it were but madnesse once to thinke it. Therefore I say, the iudgement of that eye can neuer be egall and indifferent, whiche hath more respect and regarde alwayes to the displeasures and hurtes possible to happen (onlye through the misuse of a thyng) then to the emolumentes and profites daylye and commonlye lyke to ensue to the well vsers of the same, that that of it selfe is good, is neuer to be disallowed for the sake of them that do abuse it. For as the Apostle also doeth testifie: To them that be good them selfe, euery thyng turneth to good, what euer it be is to them a sufficient matter and occasion therein to seeke the glorye of God, and the onlye profite of theyr euen Christen. And contrary, suche as be of yll disposition, in euerye thyng (be it neuer so good and salutarie) picketh out matter of maynteynaunce to theyr lewdnesse, turning matters of sadnesse and discretton, to foolyshe and ppyrthe prating contention.

Whose  
iudgements  
can neuer  
be indiffe-  
rent.

To þ good  
euery thyng  
turneth to  
good.

The condi-  
tion of such  
as be yll.

Wherefore

## The prologue.

Wherefore considering that there is nothing in this worlde so necessary, ne so good, holye, or vertuous, but that it maye by wickednesse be abused, it shalbe no great wonder though this little booke also, made, written, and set forth for a good purpose, yet by lyght and lewde persons be vsed contrary to godlynesse, honestie, or the intent of the wyter thereof. The abusion of this booke (in my simple iudgement) consisteth onely in these two poyntes. The one is, least that some yll disposed person shoulde wickedly abuse suche medicines as be here declared for a good purpose, to some deuyllishe and lewde vse. What I meane by the lewde vse of them, they that haue vnderstandyng, ryght soone wyll perceaue. The seconde poynt is, least that this booke hap-  
penyng into any lyght marchauntes handes, shoulde minister matters vnto suche, to deuise of these thynges at vnset and vnseemely tymes, to the derision or ashaming of suche women as shoulde be in presence. &c. To these reasons can I make no better answer, then hath ben alledged before. Notwithstandyng, yet I say that I trust, yea, and do not doubt, but that this booke shall be so discretely diuided abroad, that none of them shall fall in any suche persons handling.

Agayne, yf any do chaunce to them, I am sure they wyll as soone reade this Prologue, as the rest of this booke, the which thing when they shall do, here shall they heare of me, that they be in theyr doynge neyther honest, good, ne godly, but speakyng vnreuerently, contemptuously,

Wherein  
this booke  
may be a-  
bused.

The second  
poynt.

No light  
persons shal  
haue any of  
these booke.



## The prologue.

Of foolish  
and lewde  
talkers.

Some wold  
that neither  
honest ne  
vnhonest  
should haue  
this booke.

tuously and vntymely of suche thinges, they do  
great iniurie, dishonour, and contumelye to na-  
ture: for he that declareth anye thyng in man  
or woman, priuie or apart, talkyng and rehear-  
sing it in reproche, derision, or confusion of his  
euen Christen, can not be excused of mortall  
and deadly sinne, for so muche as contumeli-  
ously he ashameth and confoundeth his euen  
Christen, wherewith he byngeth hym out of  
paciencie, mouyng hym to yre, and vengeaunce,  
in rehearasyng of suche thinges, and after suche  
sorte, as he knoweth shoulde agreeue and bere  
his mynde: wherfore for suche deedes, he shal  
not be accounted of the number of honeste and  
sage persons, but of the lyght and lewde. Yet  
another sorte is there, whiche woulde that nei-  
ther honeste ne vnhoneste men shoulde see this  
booke, for because (as they saye) be a man neuer  
so honest, yet by readyng heare of thinges to them  
before vnknewen, they shall conceaue a cer-  
tayne lothsomnes and abhorring towarde a  
woman. To these I aunswere, that I knowe  
nothyng in woman so priuie ne so secreete, that  
they shoulde neede to care who knewe of it, nei-  
ther is there any part in woman more to be ab-  
horred, then in man. And yf the knowledge of  
suche thynges whiche commonlye be called the  
womans priuities, shoulde diminishe the hear-  
tie loue and estimation of a woman in the  
minde of man, then by this reason, Physitians  
and Chyrurgians wyues shoulde greatly be ab-  
horred and misbeloued of their husbandes. And I  
my

## The prologue.

my selfe lyke wyse, whiche wyrteth this booke,  
shoulde maruaylouslye aboue manye other ab-  
horre or lothe women. But to be short, there  
is no suche thyng, neither any cause therto why.  
Wherfore all suche slender reasons set apart, let  
no woman be greued who shall see or beholde  
this booke: for yf the partie be lewde, unhappy  
and knauishe that shall reade it, here I am sure  
he shall learne neither lewdenes, unhappynes,  
ne knauerye. Howebeit, generally to all men, in  
whose handes this booke shall chaunce to come,  
I counsaile and exhorte, that they take not by-  
pon them to talke of any thynges therein con-  
tayned, but onlye where it may edifie, and be  
assuredly well accepted.

So matter  
who reade  
this booke.

The exhorta-  
tion to all  
readers.

For women lightly wyll not gladlye heare of  
suche matters, by anye man butlesse it be a Phi-  
sition of whom they require counsaile, or of  
theyr discrete husbandes. It shall be no dis-  
pleasure to anye honeste and louyng woman,  
that her husbände shoulde reade suche thynges:  
for manye men there be of so gentle and louyng  
nature towarde their wyues, that they wyll be  
more diligent and carefull to reade or seeke  
out anye thyng that shoulde do theyr wyues  
good, being in that case, then the women them-  
selues. Briefly, I require all readers hereof, to  
interpretate and consture euerye thyng herein  
contayned, accordyng to the beste, and to vse  
euerye thyng herein entreated of, to the pur-  
pose wherfore it was wyrtten. For truelye as  
for

## The prologue.

The consy-  
deration  
why this  
booke was  
set forth.

This booke  
set forth in  
many other  
languages.

for my part consydering the manyfolde, daylye,  
and imminent daungers and perilles the whiche  
all maner of women of what estate or degree so  
euer they be, in their labours do sustayne and  
abyde, yea, many times with peryll of theyr lyfe  
(of the whiche there be to many examples neede-  
lesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shoulde  
be a verye charitable and laudable deede, and  
ryght thankfully to be accepted of all honou-  
rable and other honest matrones, yf by my  
paynes this little treatise were made to speake  
Englyshe, as it hath ben long syth taught to  
speake Dutche, frenche, Spanyshe, and dyuers  
other languages. In the whiche countreys  
there be fewe women that can reade, but they  
wyl haue one of these bookes alwayes in rea-  
dynes, where also this and other suche bookes be  
as commonly solde at euerye Stacionars shop,  
as anye other booke. The same commoditie then  
and profite whiche they in their regions do ob-  
tayne by enioying of this little booke in theyr  
maternall language, may also ensue vnto all  
women in this noble Realme of Englande, it  
beyng lyke wyse sette forth in our Englyshe  
speache, so that to them whiche diligently wyl  
aduert and geue heede to the instructions of  
this little booke, it may supplie the roome and  
place of a good midwyfe, and aduise them ma-  
ny tymes of sundrye cases, chaunces, and reme-  
dyes, wherein peraduenture ryght wyse wo-  
men and good midwyfes shalbe full ignorant.

And

## The prologue.

And truely (as I haue ben credibly enfourmed  
by diuers persons worthye to be beleued) there  
be syth the first setting forth of this booke, right  
many honourable Ladies, and other worshipful  
Gentylwomen, whiche haue not disdayned the  
oftener by the occasion of this booke, to fre-  
quent and haunt women in theyr labours, ca-  
rying with them this booke in theyr handes,  
and causyng suche part of it as doth cheefely con-  
cerne the same purpose, to be read before the  
Mydwyfe, and the reste of the women then be-  
yng present, whereby oft tymes, then all haue  
ben put in remembraunce of that, wherewith  
the labouryng woman hath ben greatlye com-  
forted, and alleuiated of her thronges and tra-  
uayle: whose laudable example and doynges,  
woulde GOD that many proude Mydwyues  
woulde ensue and folowe, among the whiche,  
as there be many ryght expert, diligent, wyse,  
circumspect and tender about suche busynesse as  
apperteyneth to theyr office: So be there a-  
gayne many mo full vndiscrete, vnrasonable,  
chorlish, and farre to seeke in suche thynges, the  
whiche shoulde cheefely helpe and succoure the  
women in theyr mooste paynefull labour and  
thronges, through whose rudenesse and rash-  
nesse onely, I doubt not but that a great num-  
ber of women in theyr labour speede worse then  
needed otherwyse. But here nowe let not the  
good Mydwyues be offended with that, that is  
spoken of the badde. For hereby there is no sci-  
ence, but that it hath his Apes, Owles, Weres,

How La-  
dyes & gen-  
till women  
haue vied  
this booke.

Of Myd-  
wyues.

In euerye  
science ther  
be of all soz-  
tes.

## The prologue.

Some *Wid-  
wines*  
would haue  
had this  
booke for-  
biden.

The false  
surmises of  
the maleuo-  
lent.

The good  
*Widwines*  
wer glad of  
this booke.

and Asses, whiche as aboue all other haue most  
neede of information and teaching, so most com-  
monly agayne, more then any other, wyll they  
kyche and wynce agaynst suche as woulde them  
refourne or reduce to any better way then they  
haue ben accustomed to in tymes past. And this  
do I say, for because that at the fyrst comynge  
abroade of this present booke, many of this sort  
of *Widwines*, moued eyther of enuie, or els of  
mallice, or both, diligented and endeouored  
them very earnestly, by all wayes possible, to  
fynde the meanes to suppressse and abrogate the  
same, makynge all women of theyr acquaint-  
taunce (whom they thought to haue any know-  
ledge thereof) to beleue that it was nothyng  
worth, and that it shoulde be a slander to wo-  
men, forsomuche as therein was descried and  
set forth the secretes and priuities of women,  
and that euerye boye and knaue hadde of these  
bookes, reading them as openly as the tales of  
Robin hood. &c. The whiche sayinges, as they  
were false, and vntue, and malitious allegati-  
ons onely of euyl hearted persons, to whom it  
was great greefe, that any by readyng thereof,  
shoulde see or vnderstande more then they hadde  
knowledge of before: So is it very soothe and  
true, that ryght dyuers of the better and more  
sober sort, were thereof full fayne and glad, and  
berye desyrous to haue of them, and gaue  
faythfull counsell also vnto women of theyr  
familier knowledge, to heare the booke read by  
some other, or els (suche as coulde) to reade it  
them

## The prologue.

them selues. Whose honest and vertuous indus-  
try in that behalfe, as it doth merite and de-  
serue the laude and prayse of all them that be  
laudable them selfe: euen so is the fylthye and  
vyle ingratitude and dispituous enuye of the  
maleuolent, to be detested and vtterlye abhorred  
of all people: Whose malignaunt wittes, yf  
they myght preuaile of theyr purpose, woulde  
they the good courages of all honest interpre-  
ters, in those matters and all other. And

Enuy and  
vntthankful  
nes to be  
abhorred.

thus I conclude and make an ende

of this rude Prologue, requi-

ring the gentle readers

therof, that yf they

shall fynde any

thing ther-

in inter-

pretable to diuers senses, to ac-

cept only that whiche may

make to the best, accor-

dyng to my mea-

nyng.

C2

## The first booke.

**I**n this first Chapter is brecfely  
declared the contentes of the  
first booke.



Although that many thinges entreated of in this first booke, shal seeme vnto some not very necessary to the vnderstandyng of the seconde booke, yet then contrary do I ensure and certifie (as I haue sufficiently sayd in the Prologue) that the ignorant in the first, shalbe full blynde in the seconde, to the whiche, the first is as a key, opening and clearing the matters to be intreated of in the seconde.

The vtilitie  
of the fyrst  
booke.

The con-  
tentis of  
this booke.

In this first booke then shalbe declared the fourme, maner, and situation of the inwarde partes of a woman, suche as are in them by nature dedicate and assigned to the propogation, conception, and bearyng of mankynde. In whō truely is the receptacle, & as ye woulde say, the campe or feelde of mankynde to be engendred therein. And although  
that

that man be as principall mouer and cause of the generation : yet (no displeasure to men) the Woman doth conferre and contribute muche more, What to the encrease of the chylde in her wombe, and what to the nourishment thereof after the byrth, then doth the man. And doubtlesse, yf a man woulde demaunde to whom the chylde oweth most his generation: He may worthily make aunswere, that to the mother, whether ye regarde the paynes in bearyng, other els the conferrence of mooste matter in begettyng.

The womā conferreth more the generatiō then man.

Furthermore, in this booke ye shall reade certaine thinges, which in tymes passed haue ben corruptly, negligently, yea and very falsely Written of, and of the whiche both men, yea and women themselves, haue conceaued very erroneous and misopinions, as ye shall farther perceaue in the processe.

Many thinges falsly writtē in times past.

Nowe therefore that we come to the declaration of the Organs generatiue in woman, it shalbe necessary to the bet-



The first Booke.

ter vnderstandyng thereof, fyrste to  
shewe the discription of certayne thyn-  
ges, without whose knowledg, this  
treatyse woulde be manye tymes the  
moze obscure and darke.

**I**n howe many coates the body  
is lapped or inuolued. Cap. ii.

The princ-  
pall coates  
of the body.



The body of man or wo-  
mā is inuolued or com-  
passed vniuersally with  
three principall coates.  
Of the whiche, the first  
and vttermost is called  
the skinne, in Latine

Cutis, with whom generally euery part  
of the body is clad and inclosed, the whi-  
che yet in some part is moze softe, deli-  
cate, and thinne, then in some other, and  
in some one person moze stowre & styffe,  
then in some other agayne, for causes  
needelesse here to be rehearsed.

The super-  
ficial skinne

And ye shall note, that vpon the out-  
ward face and superficie of this skinne,  
there is yet another thinner skynne, in  
Latine

Latine commonly named Cuticula, & of some Efflorescentia cutis. This thynne skin is it, the which ye see ryse lyke a bladder when any part of the bodye is blistered with fyre oz hot water, so that betwene this thynne skin and the very skinne, is contained the water which resorteth to the place by the violence of the fyre oz heat, the which thin skin also we vse to pricke to let the water issue forth: also the same that skaleth oz pylleth of the hands oz other partes of the body being scabbed & begynnyng to drye. Item the skin that the Adders do cast in the sommer time, is the foresaid thin superfici-  
 all skin, & not the verye substanciall skyn of the body in deede. For the verye skyn neuer pylleth ne falleth of but by great violēce, as by flaying, lyke as beastes be flayne at the butchers, & as they flay conies. And againe, the thin oz superficiall skin, skale it oz fal it of neuer so often, yet in the place of it is reingendred new, as good alwayes as the former. But if the second and very skin be perished, by  
 C 4 cuttyng

The verye  
 skin skaleth  
 not of.

## The first booke.

The verye  
skin peris-  
hed, neuer  
restored.

cuttyng or apostumation, or by other casualtie, it wyl neuer be restored to his olde perfection agayne, but shall shewe alwayes in the place where it is, as it were a seame, skarre, or marke, smothe and harder then the other skynne, and without naturall powers.

The second  
coate.

The fleshye  
skynne.

The seconde investiture or clothyng of the body, is named the fleshye skin, in Latin *Membrana carnosa*, so called, for because that it conteyneth and is compassed of fleshyes, then any other kelle or skin in all the bodie, & is, as it were, the lynnyng to the foresaide *Cutis*, that is the very skin immediatly aboue hym, the very skin and it beyng both basted together, by a great number of small fybres or cordes enterlasing these two skynnes, so that with great payne vnneth may they be separated the one fro the other. And farther, betwene these two skyns runne a great number of vaynes, artires, and skynnes, in euery part of the body, so that the great vaynes whiche appeare so manifestly to your syght in  
the

the armes, temples, handes, legges, feete, and other places, runne betweene the proper skinne and the fleshy skinne, this beyng to them as a bedde, and that as a couerlet.

The thirde coate of the bodye, is the fatte, in Latine Adeps, the which doeth so generally in euery parte of the bodye inuolue and wrappe the same as the other two coates: but yet the man or woman beyng in any reasonable lykynge, it is founde in euery part (except fewe) as the forehead, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, with certayne other places needelesse here to be resited, and doth entercurre and run betweene the two foresayde skinnes, receauynge & embrasyng in it selfe the small bastynge fibres, the vaines, artires, and sinnes, which (as I sayd before) be deriued from the one skin to the other: And the greater foyson of fat that there is betweene the two skinnes, the lesse be the baynes intercurring betweene them, conspicuous or sensible to the eye (thabundance  
of

The thirde  
coate, is the  
fatte.

Stoie of fat  
letteth the  
shewe of the  
baynes.

## The first booke.

Fat in some  
part, moze  
then some.

of fat downyng & coueryng the great-  
nes of them) the which also in the selfe  
same place of a leaner oz sparer person,  
shalbe seene very great, and as it were  
swollen baynes, in comparison of the  
fatter. Itē, vnderstande ye that in some  
part of the body, naturally fatnes doth  
abound much moze then in other some,  
as in the belly lyghtly the fatte is two  
fingers thicke & moze: and in women  
that be meanely fat, in the thyes & buc-  
tockes this fatte is of thye, yea foure  
fyngers thyecknes, which (as I sayde a-  
boue) alwayes hath his place betweene  
the foresayde two skynnes.

What is  
contayned  
next vnder  
the fleshye  
skynne.

Nowe immediatly vnder the fleshy  
skyn, be contayned the Muscles of the  
body, so that the inner face oz superficie  
of the fleshy skin, wherwith it toucheth  
the Muscles, is alwayes bedewed with  
a certayne slymye moysture, by whiche  
meanes the foresayde Muscles mouing  
and styrreng vnder the said fleshy skyn,  
be the freer, & haue the lesse impediment  
oz let in theyr motion, & verye easie it is  
to

to separate this skin from the Muskles.

¶ Here is declared what the Muskles be. Cap. iiii.

**T**he Muskles of mans body be called the mouyng cordes and fleshye strynges, whereby any member of the bodye is mooued to or fro, vpwarde or downeward, or turned rounde. As for example. If ye close, or other wyse do moue either of your handes, and in closyng or mouyng it with the other hande do feele the wreste of that hande, ye shall sensibly perceauē as it were certayne cordes mouyng vnder the skinne, the whiche be called Muskles, in Latin *Musculi*. To discusse curiously the nature or occasion of the name of Muskles, is not for this place. Here it is sufficient to vnderstand what is meant by the name. Yet note ye well, that wheresoeuer there is great store of Muskles, and cheefely in the myddle parte of them, there is also greate plentie of fleshē, enterlardyng

What is meant by the name of Muskles.

## The first booke.

The Mus-  
cles enter-  
mingled  
with fleshe.

lardyng & entermynglyng it selfe With  
the Muskles, & as it were conbyndyng,  
colligatyng, or knyttyng together the  
Muskles, not so yet, but that neuerthe-  
lesse they haue theyr free motion.

All other places of the bodye lefte a-  
part and vnmencioned of, here wyll I  
onlye declare a litle of the Muskles of  
the belly, forsomuch as theyr operation  
is sometymes conferent and appertey-  
nyng to the matters that we entend of.

The Mus-  
cles of the  
belly.

Ouer the amplitude of the bellye,  
next vnder the fleshy kell or skyn, be. iiii.  
Muskles, eche situate and sette vnder o-  
ther, of the whiche, the vppermost im-  
mediately touchyng the fleshy skyn, be  
called the *Byaswyle* descendyng Mus-  
cles, in *Latin* *Musculi obliqui descendentes*.  
Of these Muskles there be two, in eche  
syde of the belly one, so that these two  
*Byaswyle* descendyng Muskles meete  
together in the middle region of the bel-  
lie, and be extended or spread ouer al the  
amplitude of the belly, shapyng thereto  
as it were another coate.

The

The seconde Muskles be named the byaswyle ascendyng Muskles, in Latin, Musculi obliqui ascendentes, whose being is immediatly next vnder the inner face of the first Muskles. Of these also as of the firste, in eche syde oz coaste of the belly is there one.

The third sort of the belly Muskles, as they be situate in order, the one vnder the other, be called the ryght Muskles, in Latin, Musculi recti, which be double as the other two before.

The fourth be nominated the ouerthwart Muskles, in Latin, Musculi transuersi, because they transuerse oz ouerthwart the belly. In eche side likewise of whom, ther is one of these Muskles, which in the middle lyne of the belly encountre eche other, as I haue sayde of the aboue named three Muskles, so that the byaswyle ascendyng, and the byaswyle descendyng with the ouerthwart Muskles, do eche of them couer and compasse all the whole breadth of the bellye, but so do not the ryght Muskles,

The ryght Muskles.

The ouerthwart Muskles.



## The first booke.

The vse of  
the foure  
belly Mus-  
cles.

kles, for the breadth of them is but small in comparison of the other. All these foure Muskles be to the entrayles and bowels within the belly, as foure severall coates, by the vertue and helpe of whom, together with the ayde of the midriffe, all expulsion both byward and downewarde in the guttes, in the stomacke, in the matrix of the woman in the tyme of labour, and also in the bladder in tyme of makynge of water, is wrought, and yet besydes this vtilitie, they clothe (as I haue sayde) defende, fortifie, and strength the inwardes of the bellye.

### Of the Kell, called Peritoneum. Capit.iiii.

**V**nder the laste Muskle of the belly, called the ouerthwarte Muskle, immediatly succeedeth a certaine thin rime, kell, or skin, named in Latin, Peritoneum, whiche compasseth rounde the amplitude  
and

The Peritoneum and  
his office.

and largeour of the bellye, takyng his originall at the bynders of the loyne bones, and from thence dilatyng and spreading it selfe abroade, vnderlyne the ouerthwart Muskles, the midriffe, & part of the short ribbes. To be short, this rime vnderlyne the whole cavitie, holonesse, or amplitude of the bellye, from the midriffe to the flankes or share, immediatly contaynyng and inuoluing in it selfe all the whole contentes of the belly, euen as the skin next vnder the shell of an egge enuironeth and compasseth immediatly all the contayned meate of an egge. And as for Peritoneum, doth not onely inuolue all the entrayles of the belly in his compasse, but also yeeldeth vnto eche entrayle a coate and webbe of the cloth of his owne bodie, by the which his liuery, they be the more arctly & strayghtly affixed or fastened vnto him selfe, and farther in them selues the stronger within the cavitie of the belly: and vnder this Peritoneum, be contayned these bowels folowynge.

First

The vse & profit of the Peritoneum.

## The first booke.

Bowles cō-  
tained in  
der the Pe-  
ritoneum.

First the stomacke, which is the first receptacle and receauer of the foode or meate chawed and mashed before in the mouth, from thence descendyng ouer the winde pype, downe along the stomacke gut, and so consequently into the stomacke, then the Kell, in Latin Omentum, the liuer, the splene or melt, the bladder, and the matrix, then yet the guttes, vnder the guttes the kydnees, the maister bayne, and the maister artire. But here we shal begyn fyrst to entreate of the matrix, as the part which maketh cheefely to our purpose.

### The declaration of the names and nature of the Matrix.

Capit. v.

Dyuers  
names of  
the Matrix.

**B**Ere ye shall vnderstande, that these thre wordes, the Matrix, the Mother, and the wombe, do signifie but one thing, that is to say, The place wherein the seede of man is conceaued, fetified, conserued, nourished, & augmented, vnto the tyme  
of

of deliuerance, in Latine, named *uterus*  
& *Matrix*. The necke of this wombe, oꝛ  
therwyle called the womans priuie,  
We wyl call the wombe passage, oꝛ the  
priuie passage, in Latin *Ceruex uteri*, & *pu-*  
*dendum muliebre*, the extreme end, oꝛ y<sup>e</sup> first  
entraunce of this priuie oꝛ wombe pas-  
sage, ye shall name the passage port, for  
because that it is the port gate, oꝛ en-  
traunce of that passage, oꝛ way into the  
wombe oꝛ matrix, in Latin, *Vulua*, *i. vulua*.

The wombe passage then oꝛ the necke  
of the wombe, taketh his beginnyng at  
the passage port, and from thence sty-  
eth and mounteth ryght bywarde vnder  
the sharebone lyke a great conduct,  
varyng in length & breadth according  
to the age of the woman.

The necke  
of the Pas-  
sage.

To make especiall mention of the  
length of this wombe passage, were but  
follie, for the diuersitie thereof. Not-  
withstandyng in women it is esteemed  
of the length of .x. .xi. .xii. oꝛ .xiii. fingers  
bredth, some more, some lesse. And this  
we may say, that nature hath so prouid-

## The first booke.

ded that it is of sufficient length, to receive the privie part of man, in the generation, directing the same towarde the wombe porte, through the whiche the seede is naturally sent from the man into the wombe or mother, thereto helping an attractife power, whiche is inset and geuen to the wombe, to attract and drawe towarde it selfe the seede parted from the man (so that there be no other let.)

### Of the wombe and his partes.

Cap. vi.



The head or vpper ende of this wombe passage, is situate the wombe it selfe, whiche in woman beyng not with childe is very little, contract and drawen together, so that the amplitude or largenes thereof, passeth not the amplitude and largenes of the privie passage, the whiche thyng to some may seeme vncredible, yet by Anothomie ye maye see it to be true.

And

The wombe  
or matric in  
women not  
with chylde  
contracted.

And for all this contraction or drawing so nere together of the matrix, the out-  
 syde of it is very smothe, moyst, gliste-  
 ryng, and reddishe, as it were a litle  
 redde tempered with a great deale of  
 whyte, the insyde also of the matrix is  
 smothe: yea, and though that the ma-  
 trix (as we haue said) be full of riuels or  
 wrinkles, by thereason that it is so con-  
 tract, from a great amplitude or large-  
 nes (as may be seene in the wombe or  
 matrix of women with chylde) to this  
 litle compasse, yet maye a body scarce  
 perceave in this inner side any wrinkle,  
 (albeit that there be infinite) they be so  
 finely and nere drawn together.

This contraction of the matrix, no  
 doubt was made by nature, for these  
 causes, partlye that at suche tyme that  
 the woman is not with chylde, it should  
 occupie the lesse roome in the belly, but  
 cheefely that in tyme of conception of  
 the seede, the litle bolke or quantitie  
 of the sayde seede, at his first concea-  
 uing into the womans mother, may

The cause  
 of the con-  
 traction of  
 the matrix.

## The first booke.

be touched rounde about euery Where of the mother, and as ye woulde saye, amplexed or embraced, and containned (as the nut shell containeth immediatlye the nut) of the inner walles or face of the matrix, and as the seede is viuified, shaped, and doth encrease, so doth the amplitude of the matrix enlarge and waxe bygger, so that at the laste, when the infant commeth to his full groweth, or when the woman is great with chylde, then this coate or kell of the matrix is as thinne as a bladder, where that in tyme of his contraction, or when the woman is not with childe, the coate or wall of the matrix is as good as halfe an inche thicke.

Howe the matrix varieth by thicknes & thinnes of his coate.

The founde of the Matrix.

Nowe ye shall vnderstande, that the founde or bottome of the matrix is not perfectly rounde bowlyse, but rather lyke the forme of a mans heart, as it is paynted, saying that the partition or clifte in the matrix betweene both corners, the ryght and the lefte, is not so profoundly dented inwarde as the clift

clyfte in the hearte : For in the inwarde  
 vault, cavitie, or holonesse of the ma-  
 trix, there is a certayne seame, whiche  
 begynnyng in the middle of the fore-  
 part of the matrix, at the wombe port,  
 doth passe forth by that foresyde, & so by  
 the bottome to the hynder syde of the  
 matrix, & from thence along downe to  
 the wombe port on the backsyde, as ye  
 may more evidently see in the figure  
 hereof. This seame then is as it were a  
 litle separation, marke, or limitie, diui-  
 dyng the wombe in two equall partes  
 or sydes, the ryght and the lefte. Not-  
 withstandyng, in the matrix there is  
 but one vault, cavitie, holonesse, or am-  
 plitude, the foresayde seame beyng but  
 as it were a note, signe, or scace sensi-  
 ble marke running along the sides and  
 botome of the wombe. But this seame  
 or line where it passeth the bottome of  
 the mother or wombe, is more crasse,  
 thicke, and fleshlye, propendyng, hel-  
 dyng, hangyng or lokyng downe ward  
 into the vaulte or amplitude of the

A certayne  
 seame deu-  
 dyng the  
 Matrix as  
 it were in  
 two partes.

In the Ma-  
 trix but one  
 holonesse.



## The first booke.

Certayne  
erronious  
opinions of  
bit. selles in  
the wombe.

Wombe, the Whiche line in the sides is  
nothyng so manifeste ne sensible to be  
perceaued. Thus ye may see, that the  
myddle part of the bottome of the Ma-  
trix, is not so hye as the two corners or  
angles on both sydes be. Other distinc-  
tions or seperations in the matrix is  
there none, albeit that in tymes passed,  
diuers Clarkes haue Written, & many  
other haue beleued, that there shoulde  
be seuen selles, or seuen distinct places in  
the matrix, in thzee of the which on the  
ryght side, shoulde onlye men chyldren  
be conceaued, and in the other thzee on  
the left syde Women chyldren, and yf it  
chaunced that the seede were conceived  
in the seuenth sell, which was the myd-  
delmoste, then that shoulde become a  
monster, halfe a man & halfe a woman.  
The which al is but lyes, Dreames, and  
fonde fantasies. For the womans ma-  
trix, as I haue sayd, is euen as a strong  
bladder, hauing in it but one vniuersall  
holonesse, and the chyld when it lyeth  
in it, lyeth euer on the one syde more  
then

then on the other, the head beyng towardes one of the corners or angles, & not vpright toward the middle brydge.

The matrix hath but one holones

Of the mother port. Cap. vi.



The entraunce of y<sup>e</sup> matrix or Womb, is named y<sup>e</sup> Womb porte or mother port, the which in substance & fashion, much doeth resemble

Of the mother porte, & the situatio thereof.

y<sup>e</sup> fourme of an haukes bel, or other litle moyses bels, sauing that it is much bygger, hauing a clift ouerthwart the body therof, as ye may more plainly perceiue by y<sup>e</sup> figure hereof. And this port of the matrix is of substance more thicke and crasse then the rest of the same, & as it were a kernell rounde & clift in the midst. This Womb port also is fastened & affixed to the vpper ende of the wombe passage, as all the rest of the wombe is.

D iij How

## The first booke.

Howe be it, the middle parte of the Wombe port or the snout therof, where it bosseth downward, doth touche no side nor part of the Wombe passage, but onely heldeth pendande wyse, or loketh downward: and where as at suche tyme that the man companyeth with the woman, the priue passage is dilated & opened to the quantitie of mans priue part, yet notwithstanding, the mouth of the clift of the Wombe port is not moued thereby ne dilated: excepte that it be at suche tyme that the matrix beyng apt and disposed thereto, and other conditions requisite, this Wombe port do naturallye open it selfe, attractyng, drawyng, and suckyng into the Wombe the seede, by a vehement and naturall desyre.

The wombe  
wel disposed  
naturally  
attracteth  
the seede.

Notwithstanding, when the seede is conceaued in at this Wombe port, it doth not alwayes remayne there, but manye tymes issueth out agayne for some indisposition founde other in the place or in the seede it self. Albeit yf the seede be  
retay-

retayned styll in the matrix, then doeth the wombe port close it selfe so fast and so firmly, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat without violence, and so doth remayne vntyll the tyme of deliuerance, at what tyme agayne it dilateth and openeth it self, in such amplitude and largenesse, that it is wonderfull to speake of.

The closenes of the matrix after the seede conceaued.

**C** Of the vessels of seede, called the stones, with other therto appertayning.

Cap. viii.

**O**f eche syde of the matrix lieth a stone, which both be called the womans stones, wherein is engendred the seede & sparme that cometh from the woman, not so stronge, firme, and mightie in operation as the seede of man, but rather weake, fluxy, colde, and moyste, and of no great firmite: howbeit, as conuenient and proper for the purpose for the whiche it was ordeyned, as the seede of man for his

## The first booke.

his purpose. These stones be nothing so bygge as the stones of man, but lesse, flatter, much fassyoned after the shape of a great and brode almond. The substance and bodye of these stones is not made massyfe, or compact and softe as mens stones be, but as it were many litle kernelles sette together, betweene the which is much holonesse, and therein conteyned a certayne thinne watery substance. This substance of the stones is inuolued & wrapped with a coate or thinne skinne, very firmly annexed to the foresayde substance, which also doth receaue into hym selfe the seede byngers. He may name the same coate in Latine *Supergeminalis*.

### Of the seede byngers. Cap. ix.

Of the seede  
byngers.



The seede byngers, called in Latin *Vasa semē adferentia*, be two baynes & two artires, whiche come to these two stones, to eche one bayne and one artire, and take they? begynnyng

nyng on this wyse.

Under the guttes (as ye may see in the figures hereof) be situate the greate maister bayne, in Latin *Cava vena*, and the great artire, *Arteria magna*. The maister bayne hath his originall of the liuer, from whence it descendeth downeward along the loynes, vntyll it attayne vnto the begynnyng of *Os sacrum*, where the artire (as the wortyer) begynneth to mount bypon the maister bayne, and in this place they both diuide them selues in two partes forke wyse, the ryght part of the forke proceeding into the ryght thygh & legge, the left, into the left legge, the bayne euermore associate with the artire, the which hath his beginning of the heart, from whence he is descended through the mydryffe to this place, distributing to all places whereby he passeth artires.

The office of the greate bayne is, to conduct and cary from the liuer (which is the blood shoppe, where the blood is engendred

The originall of the  
greate bayne

The office  
of the baynes

## The first booke.

engendred) to all partes of the bodye blood, therewith to noyſe them. For to the greate vayne where they paſſe, there cometh innumerable ſmal vaines on euery ſyde, euen as to the great ryuers many ſmall ſtreames on euery ſyde do reſort.

The office  
of the artires.

The office of the artires is, to ſpreade abroad in the body the vitall and lyue-lye ſpirite, engendred in the boſome of the hearte, and to reſreſhe and temper the immoderate heate whiche other- wyſe mought be engendred in the bodye, the whiche alſo ſleepe we or wake we, do continuallye moue and beate, therefore the motion of them is called the pulce, and loke after what maner the heart (whiche is the well of theſe artires) doeth moue or ſtirre it ſelfe, and euen ſo do they.

The heart  
and artires  
haue two  
contrary  
motions.

The heart then and the artires thorow him, haue two contrary motions: one is, in cloſyng it ſelfe, and the other, in dilatyng and openyng of it ſelfe, whiche ſorte of mouynges we call the beating

beating of the pulces, When the artires do open them selues, then they attract, drawe, or sucke in fresh ayre, to temper the heate of the body withall, and also spirituall and thinne pure blood. But when they close them selfe, then do they expel mistie fumes, and hoate breathes, or vnnaturall vapours, suche as of necessitie alwayes be engendred in al partes of the bodye, by the whiche blood doth passe, for causes to long here to be alledged, neither is there anye notable vayne vnassociate of an artyre.

Nowe on the ryght side and forepart of the great vaine proceadeth a braūch, deriued from that place a longe the loynes downwardes to the head of the ryght stone, from the ryght syde lykewyse and foresace of the great artyre, descendeth a braunche thwarting ouer the great vayne downe towardes the ryght loynes, wher it meeting with the foresayde vayne braunche, before they emplant them selfe in the head of the stone, become both as one bodye, here  
straight

The meeting  
of the vayne  
and attire.



The first booke.

straight enlarging them selfe, litle and litle stepelwylse, not fully rounde, but flattische before and behinde, with the broder ende planting & infixing themselves into the head of the ryght stone.

And at the vpper and smaller ende, where this vayne braunche and artyze braunche do first meete, they beginne to entermingle, enbrayde, and enterlade eche other in suche infinite wylse, wrythyng and diuidyng them selues in thousande of litle braunches, as it were heeres of the head, the one embracing, compassing, and ouerthwarting the other so confusedly, that no wit can expresse the ryght maner and order of their commixtion. Call this parte then in English, the bradid body, in Latin Varicoso formemplexum, whose nether & broder ende, as I sayde before, affixed and implanted in the vpper head of the ryght stone, sendeth forth braunches and armes into the bodye of the same stone, manyfold wylse dispersed, spread, and commixt.

The bradyd  
body.

And

And also into the skin or couer of the stone, called before <sup>Supergeminalis</sup>, from the saide bradid body, be there deriued manye small braunches, muche lyke vnto the litle small vayne which ye see reddishe in a mans eye.

And looke what description and pro-  
cessse we haue made of the ryght syde  
seede bringers to the ryght stone, euen  
the same vnderstand of the left side seede  
bringers to the left stone, sauyng that  
the vayne braunche which commeth  
to the left stone, most commonly taketh  
his originall of the nether syde of the  
left kydney vayne, and not immediatly  
of the great vayne as the other.

And ye shall vnderstand agayne, that  
from the foresaid vayne & artyze of eche  
side, at the place where theyr fyrst con-  
iunction or meeting is, proceedeth a cer-  
tayne braunche of the vayne, assoiate  
with the artyze, which both passe forth  
together to the found or bottome of the  
mother or matrix, of that syde where  
they stande, there delatyng and sprea-  
dyng

vaynes de-  
riued to the  
bottome of  
the matrix.

The first booke.

dyng them selfe abroade in manyfolde  
smaller bzaunches, to the nourishment  
of the body of the matrix.

Of the office and vse of these seede  
bryngers. Capit. r.

The seede  
procreate of  
the bayne  
blood and  
the artiriall  
blood.

**T**hrough these seede bringers,  
blood out of the baynes, and  
liuely spirite out of the artires  
be deriued, yea, or rather (to  
speake moze properlye) attract or dra-  
wen into the stones, there by vertue and  
naturall instinction of the place altered  
and chaunged, beyng fyrst confused to-  
gether the blood and the spirite, by mu-  
tuall amplexations or embracements  
of these two vesselles, the bayne and  
the artyze beyng conioyned and vnite  
in one very body, first beginning in the  
bradid body, & then after in the whole  
bodye of the stone: So that thoro we  
the manyfolde and infinite circulati-  
ons of the attracted matter by the con-  
duictes or baynes infinitelye intricate  
and

and Wrythed With a thousande reuolu-  
tions oz turagaynes (and all in the lit-  
tle compasse of the bodye of the stones)  
the blood and spirite commixed toge-  
ther, getteth another nature and pro-  
pertie both in colour and effect.

And here ye shall vnderstande, that Note the en-  
gin and po-  
licie of na-  
ture. moſte commonly alwayes when that  
nature is diſpoſed to make a tranſmu-  
tation of any matter, that can ſhe not  
do, vnleſſe ſhe haue a mine, ſhoppe, oz  
wozkehouſe, wherein by continuall cir-  
culatiō of the matter tranſmutable, ſhe  
may bryng her purpoſe to paſſe: Euen  
as mettalles and other minerals of the  
earth, haue theyz ſcrete and vnuifible  
baynes, in whiche by daylye and long  
coagitation, mouyng, circulation, and  
hurling together, they be brought from  
one forme to another, & made metals  
of that the which befoze was none.

Of theſe ſort of mines, there be foure Foure  
mines in  
mans body. principall in the body of man.  
The firſt is the mine of blood, which is  
the lyuer, in whom the iuyce of meate,  
E I befoze

The first booke.

before of colour Whyte, is transmuted into red, made apt and fitte to nouryshe all partes of the bodye, attract and Drawen out of the stomacke and guttes, thoroWe verye small and infinite litle baynes into the lyuer.

The heart.  
is the second  
mine.

The seconde mine is the heart, which of the blood attract and Drawen from the great maister bayne, proceeding out of the foresayde lyuer, into his parlors, doth engender vehement and liuely spirite, comixed with depured and greatly eleborated blood, within the selles of the heart, from thence sent forth thoroWe the artyres, into all partes of the body, beyng in colour yealowishe, thyn and hotte blood.

The brayne  
the thirde  
mine.

The thyrd mine is the brayne, of whom all the sinewes take theyr original. In whom the Wittie spirite, the spirites of mouyng, and the spirites of al sensibilitie be engendred, and thoroW the sinewes sent to all partes of the bodye. For all suche partes as moue and feele, haue that by reason of sinewes derived

riued vnto those places from the head.

The fourth mine is the stones, in whō The fourth mine is the stones.  
by cōmixtion of all the other thre fore-  
said metalles of the body, that is to say,  
vayne blood, arteriall blood, and lyuely  
spirites engendred in the head, is engen-  
dred & produced seede, whiche bestowed  
in his due place, becommeth lyke a per-  
fection to the creature from whence it  
came, that is to say, of mankinde, man.

But ye shall vnderstande, that the re- Howe the seede is receaued into the stones.  
ceauyng of the seede into the stones, is  
not that there shoulde be any one onlye  
caue, holownesse, sell, vaulte, or parler  
in the bodye of the stone, wherein it  
myght be receaued and retayned, lyke  
as the holownesse of an egge, the meate  
beyng out of it, or of an hasell nutte, the  
kernell out of it, but farre otherwyse:  
for the stones (chefely in man moze then  
in woman) be massife, not hard, but de-  
licate and softe, as a softe kirnell, full of  
small & almost vn sensible white vaines,  
reuoluing them selfe in and out a thou-  
sand folde, and manyfold wise intricate

## The first booke.

together, within the which the seede is conueyed, caryed, concocted, or digested and altered, by vertue of the white flesh, which intercurrenth and interminglet h it self euery where betwene the foresaid bayne, lyke as the earth doth intercurrenth and intermingle it selfe betwene and among the small fibres, beades, or heares of rootes: the whyte coate also or walles of the said baynes, helping not a lytle to the transmutation of the colour from red to whyte.

Howe the colour of the seede is transmuted.

Liquid thinges saouret h of the nature of the vessels thoro we which it runneth.

For euery thing that is liquid, as the seede is, receaueth alwayes a nature of the place, mine, or conduite, by which it runneth and passeth, so that when the conduite is very small and narrowe, and long withall, then the liquour that passeth through it, receaueth and saouret h so muche the more the nature and condition of that vessel or conduite. As for an example: If there were a conduit or pipe made of lead, whose length were ten foote, and the inner compasse, holonesse, or cavitie of the same, but so much that

that an heere myght passe through it: then say I, that a gallō or quart of water passing and thrillyng through that narowe conduite shoulde saour much more of the nature and qualitie of lead, then though the holownesse of the aforesayde conduite, beyng styll of the abouenamed length, were so large that a bowle might enter and passe thoro we the same. For this reason, that when the water hath to passe thoro we so narrow passage, it maketh the longer iourney, and yeeldeth the smaller threade or streen, and therfore is touched more immediately and intyely of the insydes or inner walles of the conduite. And further, well ye wote that a lytle quantitie is sooner ouercome & altered, then a great. As a spooneful of wine standyng all nyght in a pewter or brasen pot, shall saour muche more of the potte, then a pynte of the same. Lyke wyle, yf a man woulde coole hoate drynke by pouring of it out of one pot or cup into another, sooner and more perfectly shall the cir-

A litle quantitie sooner ouercome then a greater.



## The first Booke.

The policie  
of nature.

The trans-  
mutation of  
blood into  
sperme.

constant colde ayre alter and coole it, beyng poured out very softly, makyng therof a fine and small streene, then yf he dyd the same hastily. And truely this engine and pollicie doth nature vse in euery part where she causeth any notable transmutation, makyng the matter transmutable to passe through longe strayghtes & narrow turagayne lanes, the matter bowyng, enclinyng, and apting it selfe alwayes to the dispositi- on and nature of the vesselles thoroowe which it cooleth or runneth, so that the sperme or seede of man or woman, being attracted by the foresaid seede bryngers into the stones, passeth by many narrow strayghtes, which beyng before vayne blood and artire blood, by vertue of the places through whiche it had to passe, becommeth from red colour to whyte, & of much more perfection then it was before. For this transmutation of blood into sperme, is not only in colours, but also in properties and absolute perfecti- on. What greater wonder or miracle is there,

there, wherein we may knowledg and beholde the omnipotencie of God, then to consyder howe that of the meate and drynke whiche we dayly do eate, by digestiō first of the stomacke, the fine iuice therof is separated from the drosse and grosser part: & then after at the seconde hande, the foresayde iuice passyng thoro the guttes, attract and drawen into the lyuer thoro the infinite smal baynes, there transmuted into blood, from the lyuer sent into the great maister bayne, from the which the heart drawyng part, transmutedeth certayne thereof into Artire blood. Agayne, the stones drawyng other part, maketh thereof & of the artire blood, whorled, circulate, and coagitate together, sparne: whiche sparne bestowed and conceaued where it shoulde be, becommeth mankynde.

Howe meate  
and drynke  
is transmuted  
into  
blood.

This foresaide seede, as we saide before, is nothing so firme, perfect, absolute and mightie in woman as in man, & yet can you not call this any imperfection or lack in womā: for the womā in her

The seede  
in woman,  
not so firme  
as in man.

The first booke.

kinde, and for the office & purpose wher-  
fore she was made, is euen as absolute  
and perfect as man in his kynd, neyther  
is woman to be called (as some do) vn-  
perfecter then man (for because that  
man is more myghtier and strong, the  
woman weaker & more feeble.) For by  
this reason, the horse, the Lion, the Ele-  
phant, Camell, & many other beastes,  
should be called more perfect then man,  
to the whiche man is not able to com-  
pare in naturall myght and strength.

But truely, compar yng one man to  
another, suche as be gelded and want  
the genitories, be much feebler, weake, &  
effeminate, the other: in voyce woman  
lyke, in gesture and condition nice, in  
softnes of skyn and plumpnes of the bo-  
dy fatter and rounder, in strength and  
force impotent, nothing manly ne bold,  
the whiche imbecilitie in them, maye  
wel be named imperfection. For imper-  
fection is, whē that any perticuler crea-  
ture doth lacke any propertie, instru-  
ment, or qualitie whiche commonly by  
nature

Who be vn-  
perfecter the  
one then the  
other.

nature is in all other, or the more part of that kynde, comparynge it to other of the same kinde, & not of another kynde.

Thus we haue sufficiently talked of the seede bryngers & stones, with theyr offices. Nowe shall I declare what becometh of the seede being thus engendred, and whyther it is conueyed.

**C** Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones to the angles and corners of the Matrix. Cap. xi.



**A**t the lower end & foote or base of the braded body, wher it is infixed & planted into the head of the stone, on the backe syde halfe of the stone there is the begynnyng of another vessel, which may be called the seede caryer, in Latine Vas semen deferens, whose body is whyte and hardishe, like an harde sinewe. And from that part Of the seede caryers. where it taketh his begynnyng, it passeth

## The first booke.

seth downwardes to the syde of the stone, hoopyng and compassyng along the syde therof (as ye may moze exprelye perceave in the figure hereof) tyll it come to the lower ende or base of the stone, from thence agayne resting or remountyng bywarde, creepyng along the other syde of the same stone, tyll it come and attayne in maner to the myddle region of the stone on that side, al the way as it creepeth, firmly fastned and affixed to the body of the stones, as the eye branches do fasten them selues to the walles, by whiche they creepe.

The bellye and inner syde of the foresaide seede carrier, wherby it cleaueth to the outsyde or face of the stone, beyng flattysh, the backe or outer syde therof roundyshe and smothe. From the begynnyng & head of this vessell, to this later ende in maner of equall corpulencie or bygnesse, but infinitely wreathed as an adder or yeele when thei slide fast or hastyllye, make of theyr long bodyes many halfe hoopes, halfe circles, or wreathes

Wreathes nere ioyned together: howe-  
 be it, these Wreathes be not so frequent  
 and thicke in the Woman as in the man.  
 Therefore this part of the seede carry-  
 ers may be called the Worme, in Latin,  
 Corpus lumbricosū, for because that it hath  
 many conuolutions, as Wormes lying  
 together haue.

Of the part  
 called the  
 worme.

And yf ye be disposed to separate this  
 forenamed Worme from the face of the  
 stone with a sharpe knyfe, ye shall per-  
 ceauce no maner of holonesse or cauitie  
 of bayne or other cōduite: but as it were  
 a ruggednesse, by reason of separation  
 from the partie to whom it was before  
 so surely annexed. And yet no doubt,  
 there is verily in it cauitie and hollow-  
 nesse, by and thoroowe the whiche seede  
 is caried into the angles of the Matrix.  
 Nowe then when this foresayde Worme  
 mye body hath attayned to the myddle  
 region (as it were) of the stone, it begyn-  
 neth to depart from the bodye of the  
 stone, and is no more (as it was before)  
 thicke

## The first Booke.

thicke Wreathed, but playne, smothe, & rounde lyke a rounde sinewe, With an vn sensible holoneste, departyng frō the stone along the insyde of the belly, ouerthwartying the guttes, to the angle oz corner of the Matrix, on the ryght syde thereof (yf it proceede from the ryght stone) and on the left syde (if it come frō the left stone) and that not strayght oz forthryght, but somewhat bowying & crookyng it selfe in two oz three crookes by the way. These seede carryers receaue the seede conficted, concocted, and digested in the stones and foresayd seede bryngers, conueying and directyng the same from the stones to the insyde of the corners of the Matrix, so that they whiche do open dead women, shall alwayes perceaue in the holownes of the Matrix, these two angles oz corners specially bedeawed oz imbued With a whyte slymye and thynne cleare matter, whiche no doubt is the womans seede. And in women hauyng greate  
and

& feruent desire to any man, this see de  
 doth issue from this foresayde place,  
 downe along to the womans priue pas-  
 sage, moistring all that part, as it were  
 with a deawe. Aristotle and other mo,  
 do suppose that this see de in woman,  
 serueth for no other purpose, but onlye  
 to recite, moue, and stirre the woman  
 to pleasure. But some paraduventure  
 would thinke that this were but a sim-  
 ple & an ydle or slender purpose, whiche  
 if thei did more nerey consider the mat-  
 ter, should perceauē it to be a iust, great,  
 and necessary cause. For if that the god  
 of nature had not instinced, and inset  
 in the body of man and woman, such a  
 vehement and ardent appetite and lust,  
 the one lawfully to companye with the  
 other, neyther man ne woman woulde  
 neuer haue ben so attentife to the wor-  
 kes of generation and encrease ment of  
 posteritie, to the vtter decaye in shor-  
 tyme of al mankynde. For ye shal heare  
 some women in tyme of theyr trauayle,  
 moued through great payne and intol-  
 lerable

The piches  
 of nature.



## The first booke.

So for with  
out some so-  
rowe.

terable anguiche, forswear and bowe  
them selfe, neuer to companye With a  
man agayne, yet after that the panges  
be passed, Within short Whyle, for entyre  
loue to theyr husbandes, and singular  
naturall delyte betweene man and wo-  
man, they forget both the sorow passed,  
and that that is to come. Suche be the  
priue workes of God, and suche be the  
prickes of nature, which neuer createth  
no speciall pleasure vnaccompanied  
with some sorowe, neyther is there for  
the moste part any sorowe, but that it  
hath annexed some ioy or comfort, lesse  
or more, to alleuiate and lyghten the  
burthen and weyght of displeasure.

¶ Here is declared the situation of the  
bladder in women.

Cap. xii.

**N**owe for the vicinite and  
neighbourhood that is be-  
twene the priue passage  
and the bladder, here I  
will declare a lytle the na-  
ture of the bladder.

The

The bladder in woman is assituate and set vppon the forepart of the Mother, whose necke is annexed, fastened, & vnite within the priuie passage, vppon the forepart therof, as ye may see in the figure hereof, so that it is very harde to separate the one from the other. This necke of the bladder in women is much shorter then in men, the which necke is enuironed and compassed with a Muskle, called the bladder Muskle, as it were with a brode and flat hoope ryng, firming and clasping the vrine passage in such wise, that no vrine can issue out of the bladder, tyll such tyme that this Muskle do open it selfe, & licence it thereto: which thing cometh to passe, other when the bladder is ouercharged with vrine, or els that the vrine, although that it be but lytle in quantitie, yet haue some Colericke qualitie with it, whiche for the sharpenesse and eagernesse of the qualitie pryckyng and tycklyng the Muskle, causeth it to open it selfe many tymes for lytle quantitie. &c.

The Mus-  
cle of the  
bladder.

Howe the  
bladder  
Muskle is  
forced to  
open it selfe

The

The first booke.

The descrip  
tion of the  
bladder.

The body of the bladder is rounde, into the which a lytle aboue the necke thereof, entreth the seconde vrine conduites, deriued from eche kidney one.

And here ye must first vnderstande, that on eche syde of the great master vayne, and lyke wyse of the Artyze, is situate a kidney, in Latin called Ren. And to euery of them from the sayde great vayne and great Artyze, is there deriued a braunche of the vayne, and another of the Artyze, by the which braunches the kydneys do attract and drawe blood vnto them, the which so drawen, they do (by theyr native office) separate and diuide from the watery part, sending forth the water, other wyse called vrine, downe to the bladder, through the vrine vaynes, or conduites.

Of the stone  
engendred  
in the backe

In these kidneyes is there many times in a great number of people, engendred the grauell or stone, which is called the stone in the backe, the which when it is broken, eyther of it selfe, or els by vertue of medicines, the grauell, rubbell, or peeces

peeces therof, descende from the raynes  
oz kidnees into the bladder, by the fore-  
named vyne conduites, and so from the  
bladder out at the yarde, where, yf the  
peeces be rockie oz bigge, it causeth to  
the partie in the voydyng of them, vn-  
tollerable paynes and torment. And  
note that for the moste part, the ryght  
kydney evermore standeth hyer then  
the lefte.

Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstande  
that when the vyne, pisse, oz water is  
once entred through the foresayde vyne  
conduites, into the bladder, it can not  
returne vpwarde agayne the way that  
it came (were the bladder neuer so full)  
for because that where as the said vyne  
conduites do enter into the bladder, in  
the inner face of y<sup>e</sup> bladder, there be set  
before the mouth oz gull of the condui-  
tes, certayne litle skinnie flappes, which  
suffer any thing to enter in, but when  
it is once entred, these skinnie flappes  
close the passage, and defende, that no  
thyng can rebounde, ne reflue backe a-  
gayne,

The vyne  
once entred  
into y<sup>e</sup> blad-  
der, can not  
reuert.

## The first booke.

gayne , euen as it is in a payre of bellowes, which haue euer a great hole on the one syde thereof , to let into the bellowes great store of Wynde or ayre at once, but when the bellowes is full of Wynde, yf ye stop the nose thereof with some what, there wyll none thereof returne agayne out by that waye , the flappes of leather crossing and defending the passage : yea , the more vehementlye and the harder that ye presse both sydes of the bellowes together, the faster and more stify doth the flaps stop the waye, and cleaue to the bordes of the bellowes , the violence and force of the Wynde closing and stopping his owne way, so that the bellowes would sooner breake, then that the ayre should come out there . And euen so it is in the bladder , sauing that the sayde skinnie flappes of the bladder, be more craftily, properly, and artificially wrought, then any man can deuise.

When there is then anye notable quantitie or qualitie of the vryne , gathered  
thered

thered together in the bladder, the bladder Muskle naturally doth open it selfe, and letteth it forth, passyng thorough the priuie passage on the forepart thereof.

In this bladder also as in the raynes, is there in manye people engendred the stone, Whereof commonly ensueth the strangury, dysury, With other diseases. The stone engendred in this place, yf it be of any notable quantitie, is verye harde or rather vnpossible to be dissolued, or cured without insition and cutting out. But Women be not so prone ne apt to engender the stone in the bladder as men be, because the necke of their bladder is shorter and larger, howbeit notwithstanding, dyuers of them be herewith greuously encombred.

The stone engendred in the bladder.

**O**f the baynes which resort to the matrix and the partes thereof.

Item of the termes & their course with the causes thereof. Cap. xiiii.

The first booke.



Inasmuch as the absolute vnderstandyng of the nature of the termes in women, can not wel be perceiued, except first it be knowē what vaines, how many, from whence, & after what sort they do attayne to the matrix: therfore first I will entreate of them, & then cōsequently of the termes.

Three notable vaines resorting to the matrix.

Vaynes then notable, which may be perceaued by Anothomie to reach from severall partes of the great Vena caua, or maister vayne, to the matrix and the partes therof, be thre, to whom for the more cleare, distinct, and euident doctrine sake, I wil geue thre distinct and diuers names. The first shalbe named the bottome vaines of the matrix. The second, the necke vaines of the matrix. The thyrde, the share vaines.

The bottome vaines of the matrix.

The bottome vaines be they, which proceade and take their begynnyng at the seede bringer vaines, from whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of the matrix, there dilating themselves

selfe brode in manyfolde small slippes,  
noysshing the bodye of the matrix, as  
hath ben sayde alre dye in the ende of  
the .ix. Chapter.

As touchyng the necke baynes of the  
matrix, ye shall vnderstande that in the  
foresaid .ix. chapter, I shewed you how  
that the great maister bayne, and the  
great artire associate together, when  
they attayne about *O's sacrum*, they begin  
to diuide them selues in two partes  
forkwyle, of the whiche the ryght (& so  
likewyle the left) part of the forke is re-  
diuided in other two partes forkwyle  
also, wherof the vppermoste and grea-  
test bayne passeth downe along tyll it  
come to the hockle bone, ouer whom it  
proceedeth into the vtter parte of the  
thygh, & so along downe to the legges  
and feete. The innermost and lefte or  
smaller part or bayne of this seconde di-  
uision, where it parteth from the vpper-  
moste, passeth downe along vntyll  
it come to the great hole whiche is al-  
wayes in y<sup>e</sup> share bone, through whiche

The necke  
baynes.



The first booke.

Of the neck  
baynes of  
the matrix.

it entereth into the inner parte of the thygh or flanke. But by the way, or it attayne the sayd hole of the sharebone, it sendeth forth diuers slippes and smal braunches in the necke of the matrix, and the nether parte of the body of the matrix, and also to the bladder, as ye may more clerely see in y<sup>e</sup> figure hereof.

The share  
baynes.

The share baynes take their begynnyng at the insyde of the aboue named vppermost and greatest bayne, euen at the place where it beginneth to passe ouer y<sup>e</sup> hockle bone, frō whence this slip is deriued on eche side, that is, both the ryght and the lefte, vnto the middle of the sharebone, where in men it sendeth forth braunches into the skinne that couereth the priuie parte and the coddles, & also the <sup>Perineum</sup>, whiche is the place that is betweene the fundement and the yard. In women this vaine where it attayneth the middle parte of the sharebone, it deriueth and spreadeth it selfe into the lappes, sydes, or extreme ende of the priuie passage, and also in  
the

the sayde perineum. And this shall suffice for the declaration of the baynes whiche resort to the matrix and her partes, saue that ye muste vnderstande, that loke what order or procession of baynes cometh to the matrix from the ryght syde, the same selfe order is lykewyse in the lefte syde: and agayne, that none of these baynes runne to the matrix or otherwhere, vnassociate of an artire.

Nowe to come to the declaration of the nature of termes: ye shall vnderstand that they be called in Latin *Menstrua*, so, because that once in a moneth they happen alwayes to womankind after .xiii. or .xv. yeres of age passed (beyng in their perfect health) In Englishe they be named *Termes*, because they retourne eftsones at certayne seasons, tymes, and termes, and some name them their flowers. What name soeuer ye geue vnto it, ye shall wite, that the thyng meant thereby, is nothyng els but the issuyng of certayne blood,

What is meant by this worde *Termes*.

The first booke.

comprehended in the baynes of the matrix, there by litle and litle collected and gathered betweene terme & terme, and so agayne at wont and accustomed tymes, by nature expelled and sente forth.

The which blood, the matrix vaines do attract from the great <sup>vena caua</sup>, into this part, and that not sodaynely or at once, but very soberly, and with much leasure, yea, so much as there is space betweene the one hauing of the flowres & the other (Whiche is commonly three wekes, more or lesse, accordyng to the womans wont) so long be these sayde baynes in filling, and yf they were soner full, soner also woulde they sende it forth agayne. For when they be once replenished, they can not conueniently or naturally contayne or drawe any more, tyl they be lyghtened and discharged of that that is drawen alredy.

Wherfore at the foresayde certayne circutes and termes, the small endes of these matrix baynes open them selues  
in

in the inner face or superficie of the matrix, after an insensible & secrete priuie sort, and so let to passe forth this blood, which as I haue sayd, is called the womans termes.

The cause and reason why nature created this perpetual course of termes in Women, is this: Forasmuche as almyghtie God had so institute that woman should be conceaued, efformed, or fassioned, augmented, nourished, and brought to perfection. This coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious and conuenient place to this office assigned and destinate, whereof nature created the wombe or matrix to be the sayde receptacle, & house of office wherein she mought at her leasure worke her deuine feates about the seede once conceaued.

The cause of the ordinance of termes.

Agayne it is not inough the seede to be placed vnlesse also it haue foode and nourishment, to the encrease and augmentation of the same, wherefore prudent Lady nature full wisely hath provided

The first booke.

uided, that there shoulde alwayes be prest and redye a continuall course and resort of blood in the vaines of the matrix, as a very naturall course, spryng, fountayne, oz Wel, evermore redy to arouse, Water, and nozise the feature, so sone as it shalbe cōceined, yea although the woman do neuer conceiue, other because she accompanieth not with man, other els for some other infirmitie, yet is there no fault in nature, who hath prepared a place and foode to be at all tymes in a redynesse.

Which foode, although it is ordeyned for this necessary purpose, yet whē the purpose fayleth (as it doth when there is no feature in the wombe to be fedde there with) it should be to the place but a burthen and vnprofitable loade, there to remayne oz lynger: wherfore then I say, at her set and prescript tyme she laboureth to cleare her self of it, and to expell it as superfluous and seruing to no vse. The which thing when she hath so done, yet vnto the sayde vaines of this  
con

continuall spring, resorteth of newe a-  
gayne other freshe blood in the place of  
that that is departed, whiche by litle  
and litle coling into them, in the wont  
circuite of time refilleth them, and then  
yet issueth agayne, and so this continu-  
al course doth kepe alwaies in women,  
from their youth, tyll they come to a  
bout fiftie yerres of age, or litle more or  
lesse, at what time naturally this spring  
dryeth away, which when it is gone, it  
is impossible for the woman to beare a-  
ny mo children. For were the womā ne-  
uer so yong & lusty, yet yf she neuer had  
her termes (as some suche there be) she  
shal neuer also haue no childrē, albeit it  
may be that she may conceaue, but the  
seede conceaued can not proue, but mel-  
teth & issueth foorth agayne for lacke of  
nutriment. Itē ye shal note, that where  
as some write & saye that the womens  
termes folowe the course of the moone,  
so that in the full or in the wane of the  
moone they shuld alwaies come: this is  
not true, for they haue them at one time  
and

They that  
haue no ter-  
mes can not  
beare chyl-  
dren.

The first booke.

Termes  
come not to  
all women  
lyke.

and other in all seasons of the moone. Againe, as they come not to all women after one sort, or at one season, so is the tyme of their durauce not all one in euerie woman, for in some they lynger vpon them .v. vi. vii. yea. viii. dayes at ech terme, to their great effeoblishment & strong paines in the backe. In some other comonly they passe not the space of thre dayes at the vttermost, wherefore such sustayne litle or no paynes at that tyme.

To be short, all women (for the most part) which be of very delicate & moyst complexions (as the sanguyne cheefely be) haue greatest abundance of termes, and longer tyme doth it endure vpon them. And contrary, such as be dry and colerike, other by nature, or labour and trauaile, & suche that be of complexion cold, haue least store of termes, and lesse tyme do they endure vpon them. After what maner the feature conceaued is fedde and nourysed with this bloode (matter at other times of y<sup>e</sup> termes) I  
Wyll

Wyll declare, when that I haue some-  
what firſte ſhewed the nature of cer-  
tayne caules, wherein the feature con-  
ceaued is wrapped and inuolued.

Of the three caules or wrappers wher-  
in the infant is lapped. Capi. xiiii.



The ſeede concea-  
ued into y<sup>e</sup> wombe  
or matrix of the  
mother, anon it is  
implected, clip-  
ped, & embraced of  
the inner face of y<sup>e</sup>  
matrix, y<sup>e</sup> mouth  
or port thereof in

The feature  
conceaued is  
wrapped in  
three caules.

the meane while closed & ſhut exquisite-  
lye. The ſeede then when it hath ben a  
certayne litle ſpace in the wombe, by  
the naturall heate, or rather by the in-  
ſet and ingenite vertue of that place, is  
enuironed & enclosed rounde with three  
diuers coates, caules, or, wrappers,  
which in Latin they call (Inuolucra.)

The firſt and moſte immediate or  
nearest



The first booke.

The first  
caule

nearest to the body of the conception, is a very thinne and cleare caule or skinne, whiche containeth rounde about the whole feature, and yet is fastened to no part of the feature, but onlye at the nauell, by certayne baynes and artires, whereof we wyll speake anone, this caule in Greke is called *Amnios*, in Latin *Agnua*, for cause it is as delicate as lambes be. The Midwifes commonly call it the coyfe or biggen of the chylde, and some call it the chylde's shert, the which also manye tymes proceedeth alone with the childe, eyther vpon the chylde's head, or one of y<sup>e</sup> armes or legges. And then the women reserue it as a thyng that shoulde betoken some great lucke to the chylde in tyme to come, for they beleue that euery chylde hath not suche a coyfe, because it doth appeare but seldome alone, vnaccompanied with the other caules. Betwene this wrapper or coyfe, and the body of the infant, is collected and gathered the yelowish sweat which euapozeth continually from the  
skyn

skinne of the infant, whylest it is in the wombe.

The second wrapper oz caule in Greke is called Allantoides, in latin Farciminosa, in Englishe, these two termes do signifie (haggiswyle) for because that it is fashioned much after the shape of the outward skinne oz bagge of an haggisse pudding. The inner face and superficie of this caule is smoth and moyste, fastened to no part of the first wrapper, but onlye at the nauell of the chylde, and contayneth also rounde about in his compasse and cavitie oz holownes, the whole childe, and the saide first caule.

Betweene this and the first caule, is gathered together all the store of vryne that the chylde maketh, durynge the time it is in the mothers wombe, wherein the industry of nature is to be lauded, which so prouideth, that this pisse oz vryne of the infant should be expelled betwene these two caules, and not remaine about the body therof, lest with the accrimonye and eager sharpenesse hereof,

The second wrapper.

where the vryne of the childe becommeth.

## The first booke.

hereof, it should endamage and greene the tender body of the baby.

The thirde  
wrapper na-  
med Chorion

The thirde Wrapper of the feature is named Chorion of the Grekes, in Latin, secunde or secundina, in English ye may call it the secundine: Albeit that in the second booke following, I do commonly vse to name y<sup>e</sup> whole afterbyrth, the secundine. And no doubt but that the auncientes which gaue the name of (secunde or secundina) to this Wrapper, gaue the name of the whole to the part, for this terme (secunde) or (secundina) is proper & most due to the afterbyrth, the which afterbyrth, is nothing els but an issuyng forth, and proceeding of these three Wrappers or caules, together with such grosse excrementes as haue ben engendred and remayning in the wombe, during the tyme of conception, and that immediatly after the chylde is first proceeded & come to lyght, for first issueth the infante, and then secondly, the foresaid afterbirth, & therfore it may be iustlye called the second birth or secundine.

This

This Wrapper or caule then, doth not vniuersally, and in euery part compasse and couer the infant as the other two Wrappers do, but onlye the myddle region, as it were from the vpper part of the waste, to the share of the infant, so that it is compassed with this Wrapper as with a broade hoope ryng, the latitude or breadth whereof, is commonly to be esteemed about the breadth of .vi. or .viii. fingers, and so girdeth the childe round about the body therof, as it were a broade gyrt or swadlyng bande, but yet ye must not vnderstand that it shuld touche immediatlye the body of the infant, for betweene this and the bodye thereof (as I haue declared before) be the foresaid two other caules or Wrappers, which generally incloseth rounde the whole corpes of the infant, wher as this hoope caule compasseth and couereth but the middle region therof only.

The office and propertie of this Wrapper is suche: Fyrst the vtter face of it The office of the hoope caule. cleaueth and is affixed or basted verye

The first booke.

exactly to the inner face and Walles of the Matrix, by meanes of vnumerable small baynes and artyres, which at this tyme do shewe them selues more clearely in the face of the Matrix, then at any other time, the which also cleaue vnto this hoope caule in euery parte thereof, touchyng the same Matrix, so that the saide hoope caule and the inner syde of the Matrix be basted very thicke together, by the immediate meanes of the sayde baynes and braunches, euen much lyke as the body of the Iuy tree basteth and fasteneth it selfe vnto the Walles oz trees, whereby it creepeth by many hearie fibres oz small threedes.

This coniuction betweene the Matrix and the hoope caule, reacheth vniuersally so farre and so broade, as the latitude and longitude of the hoope caule doth extende it selfe rounde about in the Matrix. And these foresayd baynes and artires do not only knyt and vnite these two together, but also entreth into the substance of the hoope caule at euery part

part thereof. And within the sayd substance of the hoope caule, these manyfold smal bzaunches meete, & enter mingle the one with the other, the baynes with the baynes, and the Artires with the Artires, so that in theyre recountre and meetyng, they produce alwayes bigger and bigger baynes and Artires, (but fewer) tyll at the last all these become two great baynes, and two great artires, the whiche foure vessels from hence proceede together, passe & pearse through the other two caules spoken of before, and so entreteth into the Nauill of the child, so that the thre caules by the meanes hereof be attached, nayled, and fastened to the childes nauil, and when they be entred into the Nauil, the two baynes degenerate in one, the whiche frō this place mounteth vpyward along the inner superficie of the belly, vntyll it haue attayned into the liuer, wher it entering, diuideth it self againe into many flippes, so that no doubt the blood is carried through this nauill bayne, from the

## The first booke.

vaynes of the mothers Matrix into the liuer of the chylde, from whence againe it is attracted into al partes noysable of the Infant.

Agayne, the two Artyzes passe from the Nauell downewarde, the one along the ryght syde of the chyldes bladder, the other along the left, tyll it attayne to the share Artires, whereof we spake before. Through these Artyzes, lyuely spirite and freshe ayre is deriued out of the mother, into the chylde, wherewith the naturall heate of the chylde is viuified and refreshed.

And these two Artires with the foresayde nauyll vaine, when the chylde is bozne, begin to wyther and drye, euerye day more and more, & become much like a harpe string, without any holownesse or cavitie. Yet ye shall note that there is another vessell, which taketh his originall at the bottome, founde, or vpper part of the chyldes bladder, and extendeth it selfe to the nauyll of the Infant, through which it passeth vntyll it come  
betweene

betweene the fyrst and the seconde caule without the chyldes body, where, by a priuie issue deuised by nature for the same purpose, is expelled the brine of the Infant, proceeding by this brine wayne from the bladder, as partly was spoken of before, that part of this brine vaine which is within the body, when the chyld is borne dryeth and withereth away, as I sayde of the other.

which way  
the chyld  
doth expell  
the brine.

The inner superficie or face of this Chorion is very strongly affixed and fastened to the vtter superficie of the seconde caule named Allantoides.

As for the bastynge that is betweene the Matrix and Chorion, many tymes it is weakened and effeoblised by reason of euyll, flegmaticke, or colericke humours therabout, betweene the bastynge conceaued, whiche ouermuche habounding, do cloy the said bastynge vaines or strynges, whereby manye tymes the one seuereth from the other before convenient season, & so causeth aborcement.

The mouthes or specks of the vaines in  
Gij the



## The first Booke.

The substance of  
Chorion.

the matrix, wherby it cleaueth to Choriō  
be called in latin Acetabula & Cotiledones, for  
what cause, or vpon what reaso, is both  
nedelesse and vnprofitable here to be re-  
hearsed. Agayne, the substance of this  
Chorion is not thinne like a skin, bladder,  
or caule: but of al other partes of the bo-  
dy, it may be most worthyly resembled  
to the spleane or melt in a man or beast,  
the corpulencie or thicknes whereof, is  
as much or more as the thicknes of the  
thumbe, the colour swartishe black. Of  
which colour also the blood therein con-  
teyned, is as the remayne and refuse of  
the purer, attract and drawen natural-  
lye of the Infant, by the abouenamed  
navil bayne. So that, to be short, Chorion  
is the immediat receptacle and receauer  
of al the baynes and artires, to be dedu-  
ced from the Matrix to the chylde, and  
the chylde receaueth only at his hande  
the two baynes and Artires, whiche  
by the way as they passe & pearse thro-  
row the other two calles, towarde the  
chylde's Nauill, they sende into eche of  
the

the caules innumerable small eye baynes and artyzes, whereby the caules be susteyned, and encreased also.

The Termes then which were wont at other times to sturre theselues in the Matrix baynes, and at certayne circuites to issue forth: Nowe when there is a feature or chyld in the same Matrix conceaued, they proceede no more forth (as superfluous) but remayne and be reserved to the necessarie nutriment of the feature, and some part thereof reflueth & is reuerted to the Womens brestes, there to become mylke, as shalbe sayde in the next Chapter. And nowe hath nature her purpose wherfore she made and created this course of blood, as hath ben Written sufficiently in the Chap. before.

But here ye shall note, that they be greatly deceaued and abused, which call the Termes the womans purgation, or the cleansyng of theyr blood: as who should say that it were the refuse, drosse and byler part of the other blood remaynyng in the body, naturallye every

The first booke.

The termes  
be of so hol-  
some blood,  
as any other  
part in the  
body.

moneth sequestrate and separated from  
the purer, for the vilitie and euill quali-  
tie therin comprehended. For vndoubt-  
edly this blood is even as pure and hol-  
some as all the rest of the blood in anye  
part of the body els.

The chyloe  
being in the  
wombe, no-  
tyshed of the  
purest blood

Is it to be thought, that nature would  
feede the tender & delicate Infant in the  
mothers Wombe, with the refuse of the  
blood, or not rather with the purest of  
it: Yes, and therfore forbecause that she  
woulde that the pure blood commyng  
frō the Matrix vayne shoulde be made  
yet purer, she suffereth not the same to  
enter immediatly into the Infant, but  
first vseth another meane, and sendeth it  
into Chorion or the hoope cal (as I haue  
sayd before) where truely it hath a cer-  
taine circulation and another digesti-  
on, wherby it is defecate, and clensted ve-  
ry exquisitly, by the diligencie of nature  
attenuated and fined, and so at the laste  
sent forth into the Infant, leauyng all  
the grosser part in the spungy bodye of  
the hoope caule.

¶

Yet much more are to be detested and  
abhorred the shamefull lyes and flaunder  
that Plinie, Albertus magnus de secretis mu-  
lierum, & diuers other mo haue Wrytten, <sup>Slaunders</sup>  
of the venemous and daungerous infec- <sup>of the Ter-</sup>  
tiue nature of the womans flowres or <sup>mes.</sup>  
termes, the whiche all be but dreames  
and playne dotage. To rehearse theyr  
fond wordes here, were but losse of inke  
& paper, wherefore let them passe with  
theyr aucthors.

Which of the three Matrix baynes conteyne the  
Termes, and howe the Mylke commeth  
to the womans brestes.

Cap. xv.



Shewed you here  
before, that to thre  
different partes &  
regiōs of the Ma-  
trix, there resorted  
from thre different  
partes of vena caua,  
thre sundrie bayne  
slips. Nowe whi-  
che of these slippes shoulde byng the  
blood

The first booke.

blood called the **Termes** into the **Ma-**  
**trix**, or from which of them the termes  
shoulde proceede, it is harde clearely to  
discusse, but onlye by lykely coniectures.  
And yet it is a thyng very necessarype to  
be knowen, for the redyer aduertise-  
ment howe medicines for that purpose  
shoulde be applyed in that place, when  
neede shoulde be, eyther to prouoke the  
**Termes** by some casualtie stopped, or  
els contrary to restrayne them immo-  
derately flowyng. For yf the bottome  
baynes of the **Matrix** do contayne only  
the **Termes**, then shoulde any medicine  
conueyed vnderneath profite nothyng,  
except it be conueyed so farre vp, that it  
maye attayne within the holownesse  
of the **Matrix**, the whiche is verye  
lytle when the woman is not with  
chylde.

Agayne, yf the necke baynes of the  
**Matrix** do only conteyne these termes,  
then needed medicines to be applyed no  
farther then to that place. As for the  
thirde **Matrix** baynes, there is none  
that

that doth once suspecte the Termes to  
proceede from them: But manye there  
be, which do suppose the termes to issue  
both at the necke vaines, and at the bot-  
tome vaines also, but most notably at  
the necke vaines, for because (say they)  
that these vaines do appeare more con-  
spicuous and notable to the eyes when  
a woman is cut open, then do the bot-  
tome vaines, which may be very skant-  
ly perceaued, wherfore they thinke that  
these necke vaines shoulde be the grea-  
ter stirrer of Termes.

Agayne (say they) we see many tymes  
that after the woman is conceaued, yet  
doth there issue termes tyll the thirde or  
fourth, yea sometymes the fyfth mo-  
neth, the which nowe at this tyme can  
not proceede out of the Matrice: for the  
port or mouth therof, accordyng to auc-  
thours opinions, is so closed after the  
seede conceaued, that the poynt of a nee-  
dle can not enter but by violence and  
force. wherfore they conclude, that the  
Termes at this tyme muste needes  
spring

107 The first Booke.

spring out of the necke vayne, and not out of the bottome vaines.

To those I aunswere, that both at this tyme and at all other tymes, the Termes issue onlye out of the bottome vaines, & out of such of the necke vaines as spreade them selfe onlye within the Matrix, as may be seene in the figure. For insomuche as nature dyd create the course of Termes for no other cause, but onlye to be a preast and redye foode at all tymes to the feature conceaued, to what purpose shoulde the Termes in the necke vaines of the Matrix serue, where there can neuer be any conception, neither the seede there can remayne? And as concerning the issuing of the Termes after conception, I say that the port of the Matrix is neuer so exactly close, but that such a liquid thing as blood is, may thryll and coole out of it, yea although (as they say) the poynt of a needle can not enter in thereat. For ye may see, that betweene the chynes and chynkes of closelye ioyned boordes,  
the

the poynt of a needle Will not easily enter, yet Water oz any other liquid thing, may passe through without lette, and even so is it in the Matrix.

And yet for all this, it shal not folowe that the seede shoulde passe out thereat, aswell as the blood, for the seede is of a more fast compacte, and stedfaste substance. And besydes this, by that tyme that the seede hath ben but a daye oz two in the Matrix, it waxeth yet more stable and stedfast, by the naturall heate of the place, yea, and is compassed with a thinne ryme, as a tender egge is vnder the shell, wherefore it wyll not so soone issue out of the Matrix without great iniurie.

Here agayne ye shall note the cause why that Physicians do counsell women which be desirous to conceaue, and can not for lubricitie, moystnes, oz waterynnes of the Matrix (wherby the attractife and attentife power of the Matrix is debilitat and weakened) to take fumes and vapours vnderneath, oz other  
medis



## The first booke.

medicines at the mouth to drye the sayd humidities, immediatly after the Termes be passed, and not vppon the commyng of them, for yf the woman should be conceaued vpon the commyng of the sayde Termes, then woulde they commixt them self with the seede, befoze the seede haue gotten yet any perfect ryme or caule, whereby the seede shoulde become the thinner and be made fluy, and so to passe forth agayne out of the Matrix, washed out with the Termes.

But immediatly after that the Termes be passed, if the seede be conceaued, then shall it haue sufficient tyme to get a strong ryme or caule ouer it, befoze the Termes come agayne. And agayne, whyles the little speckes or mouthes of the Matrix vaines be yet open, after the lettynge forth of the Termes, they shall be the more apt to cleaue and to ioyne the selues with the feature, by meanes of calues wherein the feature is inuolued, and cheefely of <sup>Chorion</sup>, named the hoope caule, as hath ben sufficientlye sayd

sayde here before.

Yet when the seede hath ben thre or foure weekes in the wombe, it is not of sufficient quantitie to consume into his nutriment all the blood that was wont to resort into the Matrix baynes, wherefore the first, second, yea, & third moneth sometimes at the womans wont tyme of Termes, there issueth and sheweth some blood more or lesse, the more in the which were wont at other tymes to haue aboundaunce of them. &c. And ye shall note that when the child is conceived, & that the caule <sup>Chorion</sup> is fastened & basted to the matrix by the vaines thereof, yet do not all the vaines of the matrix attaine to the said <sup>Chorion</sup>, but a certaine, so far as <sup>Chorion</sup> doth reach, howbeit the larger that <sup>Chorion</sup> groweth with y<sup>e</sup> child, the mo baynes doth he couer, wherefore fro those baynes that be not yet affixed vnto <sup>Chorion</sup>, do the termes flowe at this time: But whē the child beginneth once to come to a greater perfectiō & growth, then is all the Terme blood reserved  
in

## The first booke.

in the Matrix, as litle enough to satisfie the chylde, and then also part thereof mounteth vpon into the brestes, and becometh mylke, as shalbe sayde hereafter.

Yet agayne to confirme myne opinion, that the Termes do only issue out of the vauite of the Matrix: We shall vnderstande, that at sundry tymes I haue had two diuers Women in cure, the one in London, and the other in Paris: Of which, the one by a fall of her horse, the other by a violent thrust and squat on the buttockes vpon the harde stones in the streete, beyng both neare the time of theyr purgation, chaunced also both of them into one maner of disease (that is to say) immediatlye herevppon, theyr Termes dyd issue. And so continued dayly, to the one of them, the space of halfe a yere, & to the other a whole yere, so that after that time the Termes stayed agayne, and issued no more dayly as befoze, but once in foure wekes, at what time they boyded great lumpes, kakes, or cloddes of blood, congealed together  
even

even lyke the liuer of a beast. And in the meane time, betweene eche voydyng of these lumpes of blood, (Whiche as I haue sayde come to passe once in foure wekes) euery day continually appeared and issued there whyte flowres (as they named it.)

Nowe to declare the particuler occasions of this maner of voydyng of the termes, ye shal vnderstand, that by the force of the fall and squat, the Matrix baynes brake, and that so muche the more promptly, that they were the fuller of blood, and that nearer their tyme of purgation, vppon whiche bracke, the blood dayly issued after ward, whereby the vigour & kind heate of the Matrix, by litle and litle decreased and decayed, frigiditie and coldnesse succeeded. By whiche occasion also the mouth or port of the Matrix, wered the more contract and narrower, for colde closeeth, knitteth, & congeleth. Hereto helped also not a litle the great vse of colde byndyng medicines, whiche eche of them dyd apply to

Hj

this

The first booke.

this place at the simple counsaile of ignorant persons.

The port then of the Matrix by this occasion closed & contracted, the blood went alwayes dayly to procede, remayneth within the Matrix, where as fast as it droppeth and cooleth out of the baynes, it congeleth and cluddereth together, lyke as ye may see, that when a man is let blood in a basin or other vessel, and that the blood stande still in it the space of .v. or .vi. houres, it wylbe concret and congiled in a cludder lyke a lyuer, the watery part thereof swimming and flitting aboute vppon the face of it: and even so is it of the blood congiled in the Matrix, so that when there is so muche of this congiled blood conceaued together in the said matrix, that it can not contayne it any lenger, then violently and perforce it issueth out together, with farre greater peril, danger, and dolour to the woman, then though she laboured with a childe.

The whyte flowres that issued, during

ring the tyme that this blood gathered in the matrix, was (no doubt) the verye waterishe part that flected when the blood congiled, for that water can neuer congile as the blood doth, wherfore euerye day as fast as the blood dyd congyle in the matrix, so faste also dyd the water seperate it selfe from the blood, and so issued.

Notwithstanding I am not ignoraunt that the very whyte flowres in dede do procede from the seede carriars, into the angles or corners of the matrix, and so fro thence outwarde, the which disease also men haue manye tymes. And it commeth eyther of the aboundaunce of fleugme in the body, or of the corruptio and euyl qualitie mixed in the seede. &c.

These examples as I suppose may be sufficient evidences, that the Termes spring alwayes fro within the matrix, & not from any part of the necke therof. Item I haue sene diuers other womē, in whom their termes haue staid the space of .vi. viii. & x. wekes, wherewith

hij

their

## The first booke.

their bellies haue encreased and waxed bigger, so that they haue thought themselves to be with chylde: Notwithstanding, at the last haue voyded suche lyke lumps of blood, as I haue spoken of here before, not without greate peryll and daunger to them in the voydyng, wherewithall their bellies haue relaxed and decreased agayne. And thus I make an ende, to talke anye moze of the nature and course of the Termes: and now wyll I declare somewhat of y<sup>e</sup> conueyaunce & course of the milke into the womans brestes: for there is great affinitie, communitie, and familiaritie betweene the Matrix & the brestes, whiche naturally do perceaue and feele anon when the matrix hath conceived, and then begyn they to brye & to make ready their part, agaynst the tyme that the Matrix hath aldone her part, that is, agaynst the chylde be borne. The mylke whiche commeth to the brestes, is engendred of the Termes (according to the most mens opinions.)

But

But to knowe whiche way the sayde Terme shoulde attayne from the matrix to the breastes, ye shall vnderstand, that the vppermost and greatest vayne of the seconde diuision, spoken of in the xiii. chap. Where it attaineth the hockle bone, redye to passe out of the holonesse of the belly into the thigh, befoze that it perle the kell called peritonium, it sendeth forth a notable vaine braunche, which from hence mounteth vwarde along the belly betwene the right muskle and the ouerthwart, til it come a litle aboue the nauell, where the extreme or vpper ende thereof diuideth it selfe in manyfolde litle braunches, meetyng and entermingling them selues with the extreme litle braunches or flippes of another lyke vayne, descending from the vppermost chestbone, downe along the inside of the chest, and the insyde of the vpper part of the belly, vntyll it meete with the foresayde mounting vayne, a litle aboue the nauell.

And ye shall note, that this vayne

H ij

braunche



The first booke.

braunche proceadyng from *vena caua*, at the highest chestbone downward along the inner side of the chest or brest, by the way as it passeth, it yeldeth certayne litle slippes and small braunches of it self, betwene the ribbes into the brestes. Wherefore the consent of all aucthours is, that by the meanes of these descending bayne braunches at both sides of the bodye, & the other ascending bayne braunches on both sides of the bellye, there shoulde be great communitie and fellowship betweene the brestes in women, and the Matrix or the wombe.

For doubtlesse by common experience, ye may see that when y<sup>e</sup> time of conceytion in women is, & that by this meanes the termes be stopped, then as the termes do deminish & waxe lesse, so doth the mylke in the brestes encrease and waxe every day more & more, as who might say that the superfluitie of blood wonte at other tymes to boyde in the name of *Termes*, now at this tyme by the prudence and prouisiō of nature, is  
retay-

retayned as no superfluitie, but rather a necessary humour, reuerted and destinate another waye, that is to saye, sent from the vayne of the Matrix parte thereof vpwarde by the fozenained ascending vayne branches, at their handes agayne receiued and naturally attracted by the other descending brest vayne, through whom it is caried into the brestes, where by newe naturall circulations it is digested into Whyte milke, being before red blood, redy now prepared to nozyshe the chylde when nature shall sende it into the worlde.

Agayne, so long as the woman getteth sucke to the chylde, & hath store of mylke in her brestes, her termes be of very litle or no quantitie. These be evidences that there should be great familiaritie betweene the Matrix and the brestes, forsomuch as the ebbing of the one, is the flowyng of the other: wherefore Physitions sometimes, when the flowres issue more vehemently then needeth, they set boxyng glasses vnder the

The first booke.

brestes, meanyng thereby to reuert and  
returne bywarde, the matter enclined  
to much downewarde, the which prac-  
tise how much it preuaileth, I Wyl not  
here dispute. Yet in this matter to dis-  
cusse the very veritie as neare as reason  
and the knowledge of Anothomie Will  
geue leaue, ye shall not vnderstande my  
sayinges that I should meane that al-  
wayes when the termes stop beneath  
by anye colde, thought, or other occasi-  
ons, by and by the same blood to stye  
and mount by into the brestes, & there  
to become milke: for the contrary here-  
of is dayly seene. For most commonlye  
they in whom these termes do stop, for  
any other cause then conception, the su-  
perfluous blood retayned in the bodye,  
and in the baynes wandring, causeth  
to the partie great headache, taketh a-  
waye their stomacke, and engendreth  
diuers other inconueniences, neither in  
the meane Whyle is there any thing the  
more mylke in the brestes.

Wherefore ye may wel saye, that the  
cause

cause of plentie of mylke in y<sup>e</sup> womans brestes in tyme of her being with childe, and much more afterwarde, commeth chiefly by a priuie naturall instinction, whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at that tyme more then at anye other, to draw vnto it selfe greater abundaunce of blood, conuerting and altering the same by the proprietie of the place, into conuenient mylke.

It is not a sufficient cause to replenishe the brest the Termes to be by any occasion stopped beneath, but there must also concurre the attractiue power, inset in the brestes to drawe the sayde blood (matter at other times of the Termes) without which attraction, be the Termes neuer so long stopped, yet shall the brestes be nothing the fuller, if it chaunce that this attractiue power halte or be not able to attract sufficient matter to make mylke vpon for the Infant, then Phisitians are wont to helpe the debilitie of nature, with cupping glasses set vpon or vnder the brestes, or els with gentle

The first booke.

the attractive emplaisters applied to the same places.

And although that into the brestes do resort greate store of other vaynes, some descending from the vaines of the shoulders, & other some from y<sup>e</sup> vaines passing by the armerholes into the armes and handes, the which in moyson and notable bignesse, muche surmount the quantitie of the aboue named descending brest vaynes, as it maye appeare evidently in many women which have these vaynes appearing in the superficie of their brestes immediatly vnder the skin, very conspicuous and sightful: yet notwithstanding it is thought by strong coniectures, that the mylke in the brestes should be engendred only vpon the blood mounting from the aforesayde ascendyng Matrix vaynes, and not vpon the blood conteyned in the other vaynes, howe conspicuous so euer they be, so that the blood in them comprehended, serueth onely to the noyishment of the substance of the brestes.

brestes them selues, & not to the main-  
tenaunce of the mylke.

To declare here curiously the maner  
that nature vseth in circulatynge of the  
attracted blood, wherby alterations is  
made from one colour to another, wold  
require a longer processe, the which for  
brevitie we will omit at this time, with  
many other problemes, doubtles, and  
difficulties concernynge the same. And  
so we make an ende of this first booke.

## The first booke.

**T**he declaration by letters, of the figures folowynge, wherein be set forth to the eye, every part in woman, mentioned in this booke befoze: Which in the former printings hath ben corrupted, but nowe truely set forth.

**T**he first figure of the partes of women, with the declaration and characters of the same.



**I**n this first figure is set forth the tronke or stocke of a womans body, laid on y<sup>e</sup> ground, whose peritonium is opened with the muskels of the Abdomen, and turned ouer to ward y<sup>e</sup> inside, according to the vse of cutting, & afterwarde we haue cut away all the bowels or entrayles from Mesenterium, the strayght entrayle beyng yet left in the bodye, with also the whole Mesenterium, whose pannicles we haue here somewhat taken away, and set a portion from the other, that the nature of Mesenterium might come to lyght, but this present figure is for this cause principally declared and set forth, that it myght so shewe the position of the matrix or wombe, and the bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no part of the sayde matrix or wombe beyng moued. For here is as yet no pannicle pluckt away from the matrix or wombe, but that all thinges are here yet whollye seene, lykwysle as in women  
some

some what fat they do appeare to the cutter, the bowels beyng taken away. For women are so fatte, that when they be vexed and kylled with long sicknesse, and become moſte leanest, then they shewe no kynde of procelle of vessels, vnlesse the pannicles or thinne couerynges be seperated a sunder.

A.B.C.D. The inner face or part of the former seate of Peritonium.

E E A part of Mesenterium, knitting the thinne intrayles to the backe.

FF Here is noted another pannicle of Mesenterium, plucked from the other which we haue marked with G and G. But both the pannicles do shew the order of the vessels of Mesenterium, and order of the harnelles put betweene the distributions of the vessels.

HH In this part of Mesenterium, the entraile Colon was committed and set to, where it was nyest to the straight gut.

I And in this part of Mesenterium, did consist and stande the beginning of the intrayle Colon, or his continuance with the thinne intrayles, and also the blynde gut.

K The straight gutte beyng there cut of where Colon dyd ende, whiche seate or place is ryght agaynst the place of the knitting together of the hockle bone with the lowest turnyng ioynte of the loynes.

L The former seate of the bottome of the Matrix, from whence is nothing perceyued pluct away.

M The right stone or testicle in a woman.

N The



## The first booke.

**N** The lefte stone of a woman, and the former part of this is here entirely seene, although there be of the ryght but a small portion perceyued, and it is for this cause, that we haue in such manner set forth the right stone: for both the testicles are couered with a pannicle, whiche pannicle byngeth downe the seede vesselles of a woman, whiche do spryng from peritonium: but we haue vncouered the lefte testicle of that pannicle, with the hande onely without any knyfe, leauyng the ryght as you see. For this pannicle doeth not growe to the former seate of the testicle in anye parte thereof, but lyeth there onely.

**O** A pannicle springing and growyng forth from the right seate of peritonium, & committing the ryght testicle with the seede vesselles on this side, and those vessels whiche infolde the higher seate of the Matrix to the backe, contayning together the Matrix or wombe, and afterwarde with the pannicle of the other side, constituting the seconde cote of the Matrix.

**P** This way in the foresayde pannicle, runne forth fleshy fibres or thinne skynnes, constituting the ryght Muskle of the Matrix or wombe.

**Q** With these karacters, the pannicle of the left syde is noted, whiche is correspondent and lyke to that pannicle, which the foresayd **O** did poynt to vs.

**R S** The former part of the necke of the Matrix, couered as yet, betwene **R** and **S** with that cote  
which

which y partes of peritonium offer vnto it, which bring forth vessels vnto it, and from it, and do knitte it to peritonium: but the space beyng betwene R and S doth shewe the largenesse of the necke of the Matrix. And the wrynkes whiche are seene here, are they whiche the necke of the Matrix fallng into it selfe, not stretched forth agayne, doth shewe in the cutting.

T The bladder whose hinder part is here chiefly seene, for we haue so caste our eye in the declaration and setting forth of this figure, as though we woulde principally beholde in the body beyng prostrate and layde along, the hinder seate of the bladder, whiche loketh towarde the Matrix.

For yf ye wyll suppose and imagine this bodye of a woman, to be set byryght as that whiche next foloweth, ye shoulde thinke otherwyle then the thing is, that the bottome of the Matrix is set forth much higher then the bladder.

V This is a portion of the nauell, deliuered in the cutting from peritonium, and tourned ouer together with the vesselles seruing properly to the chyld.

X A portion of a bayne goyng from the Nauell to the lyuer.

Y A way goyng from the hyghest seate or place of the bottome of the bladder pertaynyng vnto the Nauell, and byrnyng from thence the brine of the chyld, betweene his seconde and the innermost infolder.

Shew

## The first booke.

Ket & She w two artires creeping forth hyther from the Nauell, by the sides of the bladder, and graft in or continued in this place, to the braunches of the great artire, going principally to the holes of the bones aboue the priuie members.

**T**he declaration of the seconde figure of the members of women, and of the karacters of the same.



**W**e haue here taken away the skin from the right teate of this present figure, that the nature of the teates myght, as nygh as maye be, be set before the eyes, & afterward we haue cut awaye the ventricle with the bowels, and also Mesenterium and the splene, leauing the strayght entrayle in this place vnnedled with, as well as we dyd in the figure before. And moreouer, we haue as it were, taken away from the vttermoost cote whiche Peritonium gaue vnto it, cutting awaye also all the pannicles, that the vessels carying forth the substaunce and matter of seede to the stones, and also the vesselles carying awaye the seede from thence to the Matrix, should appeare and be seene. Also we haue tourned ouer the bladder downewarde on the leste syde, lyke wyse  
breaking

breakyng the way or conduite whiche beareth forth the brine to it from the ryght kydney, that the insertion of the wayes of bearyng forth the brine to the bladder myght appeare, and that the bladder shoulde not let the inspection or sight of the Matrix or wombe. Last of all, we haue cutte away from this figure a portion of the bones aboue the priuie members, that the neckes of the Matrix and of the bladder myght the more commodiously be seene.

AA Waynes runnyng forth oftentymes to the teates, from those wayes whiche are offered to the skynne, whiche is brought ouer the heyght of the shoulder.

B Waynes spyngyng from those baynes whiche are led forth by the arme hole to the hande.

C The principall body of the teate.

DD Karnels and fatnesse spreade abroad euery where on the karnelly body, marked with C.

EFGH The hynder outsyde or insyde of the former seate of Peritoneum outward. For the former region of Peritoneum is here bowed by ward and downewarde towarde the syde.

IK Portions of Waynes and also Artyres, cree- pyng forth downewarde, vnder the brest bone from the throte.

L The gybolyte or swellng seate of the lyuer.

M The holow part of the lyuer is here also some- what seene.

N A small portion or peece of the wayne goyng from the Nauill to the lyuer.

O The stocke of vena porta is here cut away, with

## The first booke.

the vesselles brought vnto it.

P The holowe bayne.

Q The great artyze.

R The rootes of the artyzes goyng to the ventricule, the lyuer, the spleane, the caule, and to the bowelles.

S The begynnynge of a bayne infoldyng the fat coate of the left kydney.

T The bayne and artyze whiche bryngeth the whaythe humour to the ryght kydney.

V The bayne and artyze whiche bryngeth the whaythe humour into the left kydney.

X The begynnynge of the bayne goyng into the fatte coate of the ryght kydney.

Y The former seate of the ryght kydney.

Z The former seate of the left kydney.

aa The way that bryngeth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder, but at the nethermour a is broken away but the portion that is left of this way, and is continued to the bladder, marked with b.

b The way that carryeth forth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder.

cc The way that carryeth forth the brine from the left kydney into the bladder.

dd The ryght seede bayne, whose begynnynge the hygher d doth shewe.

e The seede bayne goyng to the left testicle.

f The spryngyng forth of the artyzes of seede.

g The ryght seede artyze.

h The left seede artyze.

ikl The former part of the bottome of the Matric,

trix, and i sheweth the ryght blunt angle or corner of the sayde bottome, where k sheweth the left, but l sheweth the region or place of the matrix, where the mouth of his bottome consisteth, and where his necke begynneth.

m This is the strayte gut. And that I may the lesse burden both the sydes of this figure with many letters, I wyll at this present affixe the Characters but on the one syde only.

n A portion of the bayne and artyre of seede, whiche do go to the vpper syde of the bottome of the wombe.

o Portions of the baynes and artyre of seede goyng to the testicle, and there ioynyng and goyng together, and constituting.

p A body lyke the spire of a steeple, and this letter p doth poynt vs the roote or foundation of this body, whereas the sayde roote or foundation is committed and ioyned to the testicle.

q From that sayde body such vessels runne forth into the tunicles, commyttynge and ioynyng the testicle to Peritonium.

r The former face or part of the testicle.

s The begynnynge of the vessell whiche beareth foorth the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

tt The bowinges and turninges ouer agayne of the vessell whiche beareth foorth the seede, which turnynges the sayde vessell maketh round about the sydes of the testicle.

v The goyng foorth of the vessell whiche carryeth foorth the seede of the Matrix.

## The first booke.

- xx The necke of the Matrix.
- y Vessels foldyng in the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix or wombe, and the necke also of the same.
- z A bayne comyng from those vessels to the bladder, which vessels do folde and wynde in the necke of the Matrix, and this Karacter also noteth the insertion of the wayes of the brine.
- μ<sup>B</sup> The hynder seate of the bottome of the bladder.
- 7 The Muskle of the necke of the bladder.
- ∧ In this seate the necke of the bladder is implanted into the necke of the Matrix.
- ∞ Small skinnie portions of fleshe of the necke of the mouth or openyng of the wombe or Matrix, and the small hyllockes of the Matrix, with the mouth or openyng of the necke thereof, neede here no speciall declaration with Karacters.
- ∫ The roote of the Artire, goyng into the lowest part of Mesenterium.
- α Vessels which do ascende and ryse bpwarde to the muskles of the Abdomen, from the Waynes and Artyres whiche do go into the legge.

### The declaration of the Karacters of the thirde figure of women.

**T**his present figure sheweth the matrix or wombe, with the thynne couerynges whiche do bynde it to *Peritonaeum*, cut forth from the bodye, and the

The first booke. Fol. xlviij.

the necke therof is here so folded together, and turned ouer, that the mouth or opening of the bottome of the matrix doth here manifestly shewe it selfe. And we haue likewise so opened the bottome and the necke of the bladder, that the holownes of the same, with the insertion of the wayes of brine, are here manifestly sene.

A The former face of the bottome of the matrix, being not yet vncouered of any pannicle.

B B The necke of the matrix.

C A parte of the bottome of the matrix, swelling forth into the vpper seate of the necke of the matrix, in maner of a hirnell.

D The mouth of the bottome of the matrix.

EE A pannicle knitting the matrix to *Peritoncum*, and conteynyng his vesselles.

F The left testicle of the matrix.

G The bayne and artire of seede.

H Portion of the seede bayne and artyre, commyng to the vpper seate of the bottome of the matrix.

I A portion of the seede bayne and artyre, commyng to the testicle.

K The vessell caryng the seede from the testicle into the matrix.

L The holownesse of the bladder.

M The insertion of the wayes of the brine.

N Here hangeth forth a lytle peece of the wayes of the brine:



## The first booke.

The declaration of the Characters of the  
fourth table of women.

**S** All braunches running  
foorth into the pannicle, where  
they are committed and ioyned  
to Peritonium.

A portion of the wayne and  
artire going into the testicle, fal-  
lyng to the vpper seate of the bottome of the ma-  
trix.

The commixtion and goyng together of the  
seede bayne and artyre, that is lyke the spire of  
a steeple, whiche we lyken to the braded baynes  
called Varices.

The left testicle.

The vessell caryng foorth the seede from  
the testicle into the matrix.

The blunte angle or corner of the bottome of  
the matrix, in whom the vessell that bryngeth  
foorth the seede attempteth his insertion.

In this seate the bottome of the matrix is  
ended into the necke thereof, and in this region  
or place is the begynnynge of the mouth or ope-  
nyng place thereof.

The necke of the Matrix or wombe.

Here the necke of the bladder is brought forth  
into the necke of the matrix, and there endeth.

Those are vessels infolding the nether seate of  
the bottome of the matrix, and also his necke.

The swellng bymmes at the mouth of the  
necke of the matrix.

The

vv The wayes that byng the brine from the raynes into the bladder.

The declaration of the Characters of the. v. bf. vii. and. viii. figures.



¶ I have nowe divided this fyfth table of the wombe or Matrix, conteynynge a male chylde on the former syde, with a long section or cut, and another whiche are ouerthwart slytte, remo- uynge and takynge a- waye into the sydes,

partes of the coates of the bottome of the ma- trix, yea, euen from the vttermoost infolder of the chylde.

ABCD The inner syde of the sayde infolder of the matrix, whiche before the section was brought about and couered with the infolders of the chylde.

EE The vtter syde of the matrix, and the hygh- er E noteth the top or the ryght angle or corner of the matrix, brought forth bywarde and to- ward the ryght syde, more then towarde the left, because it is a man chylde which is in þ wombe.

F The fyfste or the vttermooste infolder of the chylde.

GG The seconde infolder of the chylde is here

Jiiii

also.


## The first booke.

also a great part seene.

**H** A part of the necke of the matrix, to whom in the other syde we haue left growyng to it a bayne and an artire, whiche is pyncipally distributed into the lower seate of the bottome of the matrix.

**I** Here is also yet left the ryght testicle, that the situation of it myght be seene and perceaued in women beyng with chylde.

**C** The syrte table sheweth the infolders of the chylde, taken whole a way from the Matrix, and not broken.

**K**  The vttermoste infolder of the chylde.

**L** The second infolder of the childe, whiche forsomuche as it is transpernaut in maner of a pannicle, it suffereth the chylde (bewrapt within this thirde infolder) in it somewhat to be seene.

In the seuenth table we haue diuided the vtter and the seconde infolder of the chylde, with a longe section oz cutte, and we haue here expressed and shewed forth both the sayde infolders, taken away from the thirde infolder, and the thirde infolder also yet whole.

**M** The thyrde oz the inmoste infolder of the chylde, whiche because it is so thinne that one maye easlye see through it, the fourme of the chylde lying therein, somewhat sheweth hym selfe to the eyes.

**N** The

**N** The proceeding or order of Waynes and Ar-  
tires, goyng to the Nauyll from the fyrst infol-  
der of the chylde.

**OPOP** The seconde infolder of the chylde.

And **OO** shewe his insyde, where **PP** sheweth  
his btter syde.

**QR** The fyrste infolder of the chylde, where **Q**  
noteth the outsyde, and **R** the insyde, but the  
proceedyng and order of the vesselles by the se-  
conde and the thyrde infolder, are perfectly kno-  
wen without any helpe of the Characters.



**A** The eyght Table expresseth the  
chylde delyuered from al his coates,  
and so it sheweth hym lying, by the  
wonderfull prouidence of nature,  
not as the common opinion of the  
bulgar sorte of wyters affirmeth, but as you  
may here see in these figures, & so doth it lye in  
the middelt of the wombe. For it is mooste vnttrue  
that the chylde doth lye in the wombe rounde,  
lyke as it were bowed, so that the knees shoulde  
touche to the face, but as he is set here in the  
viii. figure. And obseruyng this true situation  
of him, you shall fynde commonly none other si-  
tuation of the chylde, nor ioynyng of any ioynt  
of hym therein, then is here expessed.

But in this figure **MMNOPOPQ & R** do  
note the same as in the seuenth Table, saue  
that **M** and **M** do shewe the insyde, or inner part  
of the thyrde infolder. But **S** sheweth here pri-  
uately the goyng forth of the vesselles of the  
Nauyll

## The fyrst Booke.

Matryll, whiche is betweene the Matryll and the  
ioynng together of the vessels with the thyrde  
infolder, which is also brought forth with a  
great space betweene the shewyng, where be  
certayne (as it were) knottes or swellynge,  
accordyng to the number of the whiche knot-  
tes more or lesse, Hydwyues foolyslye do pro-  
phesie eyther many or fewe chyldren to the wo-  
man, whiche of the learned men is taken but  
for a very fantasie, and worthy of reprehenti-  
on. And moreouer, when the chylde commeth  
foorth (as it chaunceth sometymes) hauyng  
that about his necke, they say that it is the  
same chyldes destynye to be hanged, with many  
other foolyshe conceytes, rather to be laughed  
at, then to be beleued.

### The declaration of the Characters of the nynth figure of women.



**M**D the nyynth figure sheweth  
the matrix cut foorth of the bo-  
dye, beyng of that bygnesse as it  
was seene taken foorth of a wo-  
man at the laste Anothomye  
which I did see at the vniuersitie  
of Padua in Italie. And moreouer we haue so  
diuided and cutte asunder the bottome of the  
Matrix by the myddle, that the concauitie and  
hollowe bought within the same myght be  
perceaued, and the thicke substance also of  
both the coates of the Matrix in women, when  
they

they be not with chylde.

AABB The concauitie and holow bought of the bottome of the matrix.

CD A line somewhat after the maner of a seame called in Latine Scortum, which doth belong to the place wherein the testicle doth lye, whiche swelleth somewhat foorth into the bought of the bottome of the matrix.

EE The thicknes of the inner and proper coate of the bottome of the matrix.

FF A portion of the innermer bottome of the matrix, swelling foorth downewarde from the hygher seate of the matrix, into the holownesse and bought of the bottome.

GG The beginning of the necke or opening place of the bottome of the matrix.

HH The seconde or vttermer infolder of the bottome of the matrix, descended from Peritonium.

II Here we haue reserued a portion on both the sydes of the thinne couerynges, descended from Peritonium, and conteynyng the matrix.

K Here is also seene the substaunce of the necke of the matrix, because the cuttyng wherewith we diuided the bottome of the matrix, was begun at this place.

L A part of the necke of the bladder, implanted into the necke of the matrix, castyng foorth into it the brine. The swelling partes of Abdomen and whatsoeuer is els to be consydered thereof, they may be sufficiently knowen without direction of Characters.

FINIS.

## The second Booke.

Of the tyme of byrth. And which is called  
naturall or unnaturall

Cap. i.

**I**n the first booke We haue  
sufficiently set forth and  
described the maner, situa-  
tion, & forme of the Ma-  
tric wherein man is con-  
ceaued, with dyuers other matters ap-  
pendyng and concernyng the better vn-  
derstandyng of the same. And now we  
here in this seconde Booke, we wyl de-  
clare the maner of the quytyng and de-  
liueraunce of the Infant out of the mo-  
thers wombe, with other thinges ther-  
to appertaynyng. And first here in this  
Chapter we wyl declare the tokens and  
signes whereby ye may perceauē whe-  
ther the tyme of labour be neare or not:  
For when the houre of labour appro-  
cheth neare, these signes folowing euer-  
more proceade and come before.

First certayne dolours and paines be-  
gyn to growe about the guttes, the na-  
uyll, and in the raynes of the backe, and  
like

Tokens to  
know when  
the tyme of  
deliuerance  
is neare.

lyke wyse about the thyghes, and the other places beyng neare to the priuie partes, which lyke wyse then beginneth to swell and to burne, and to expell humours, so that it geueth a playne & euident token that the labour is neere.

But ye shall note that there is two maner of byrthes, the one called naturall, the other not naturall. Naturall byrth is, when the chylde is borne both in due season, and also in due fashion.

Two sortes of deliuerance.

The due season is most commonly after the ninth moneth, or about fortye wekes after the conception, although some be deliuered sometimes in the seuenth moneth, and the chylde proueth very well. But such as are borne in the eyght moneth, other thei be dead before the birth, or els live not long after.

The due fashion of birth is this: first the head commeth forwarde, then foloweth the necke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lying close to the body toward the feete, the face and forepart of the chylde beyng towardes the face

The due fashion of byrth.

and



## The second booke.

and forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrste of the byrth figures. For as hath ben sayde alredye in the fyrst booke, before the tyme of delyuerance, the chylde lyeth in the mothers wombe the head vpwward, and the feete downeward, but when it shoulde be deliuered, it is turned cleane contrarye, the head downeward, the feete vpwward, and the face towardes the mothers belly, and that yf the byrth be naturall. Another thyng also is this, that yf the byrth be naturall, the delyuerance is easie without long tarying or lookyng for it.

The byrth not naturall is, when the mother is delyuered before her tyme, or out of due season, or after anye other fashion then is here spoken of before: As when both the legges proceede first, or one alone, with both the handes vpw, or both downe, other els the one vpw and the other downe, and diuers otherwise, as shalbe hereafter more clearelye declared.

Of easie and breasie, difficult, or dolou-  
rous deliuerance, and the causes of it:

With the signes howe to knowe  
and to see the same.

Cap. ii.



Very many be the perylles,  
daungers, and thronges,  
which chaunce to women  
in theyr labour, whiche al-  
so ensue and come in diuers  
wayes, and for dyuers causes, suche as  
I shall here declare.

Many perils  
chauncing  
to women  
in theyr la-  
bour.

First when the woman that labou-  
reth is conceaued ouer young, as before  
xii. or xv. yeres of age (whiche chaun-  
seth sometyme, though not very often)  
and that the passage be ouer anguste,  
strate, or narrowe, other naturallie, or  
els for some disease and infirmitie, whi-  
che may happen about the parte, as  
apostumes, pulshes, pyles, or blysters,  
and suche other. Through the whiche  
causes, nature can not (but with great  
dolour and payne) open and dilate it  
selfe, to the expellyng and deliuerance  
of

The second booke.

of the chylde. And sometime the vesicke  
oz bladder, oz other intrayles beyng a-  
bout the Matrix oz Wombe, be also a-  
postumate and blystered, whiche beyng  
greeued, the Matrix oz Wombe likewise  
for vicinitie and neighbourhead is gree-  
ued with them, & that hindereth great-  
lye the deliuerance. Also sometyne in  
the fundement are humozrhodes oz pil-  
les and other pushes, chappynge oz  
chynes, whiche cause great payne. Also  
hardnesse and difficultie oz byndyng of  
the belly, whiche thinges for the greefe  
and payne that ensueth of them, cau-  
seth the woman to haue lytle power to  
helpe her selfe in her labour.

Furthermore, yf the partie be weake  
and of feble complexion, oz of nature ve-  
ry colde, oz to young, oz very aged, oz ex-  
ceedyng grosse and fatte, oz contrary-  
wyse to spare and leane, oz that she ne-  
uer had childe before, oz that she be ouer-  
timorous and fearefull, dyuers, way-  
warde, oz such one that wyll not be ru-  
led, remouyng her selfe from one place  
to

to another, all suche thynges causeth the labour to be muche moze paynefull, cruell and dolorous, then it woulde o-therwylse be. Also ye must vnderstande that generally the byrth of the man is easier then the byrth of the female.

Item, yf the chylde be of a fuller and greater groweth, then that it maye easly passe that narrowe passage, o2 contrary- wise, yf it be so faint, weake and tender, that it can not turne it selfe, o2 doth it very slowly, o2 if the woman haue two chyldezen at once, other els that it with the whiche she laboureth, be a monster: as for example, yf it hath but one bodye & two heades, as appeareth in the .xvii. of the birch figures, such as of late was seene in the dominion of wæerdenbergh.

Agayne, when it proceedeth not in due tyme, o2 after due fashon, as when it commeth forth with both feete o2 both knees together, o2 els with one foote onlye, o2 with both feete downe- wardes, and both handes bywardes, other els (the whiche is most perillous)

## The seconde booke.

sidelong, arselong, or backlong, other  
eis (having two at a byrth) both pro-  
ceede with their feete fyrst, or one with  
his feete, and the other with his head,  
by those and dyuers other wayes the  
woman sustayneth great dolour, paine,  
and anguythe.

Item, yf the woman suffer abor-  
ment, that is to saye, byrning forth her  
childe in the .iiii. or .v. moneth after the  
conception, whiche is before the due  
tyme, in this case it shalbe great payne  
to her, for so muche as in that tyme, the  
porte of the wombe is so firmly and  
strongly enclosed, that vnneth the point  
of a needle may enter in at it.

Also if the child be dead in the mothers  
belly, it is a very perillous thing, for so  
much as it can not be easily turned, nei-  
ther can it welde or helpe it selfe to come  
forth, or if the child be sicke or weakened  
so that it cannot for feblenes helpe it selfe.

To knowe  
whether the  
chylde be  
weake in  
the mothers  
belly.

The which thing may be foresene and  
known by these tokēs: If the woman  
with chylde haue ben long sicke before  
her

her labour, yf she haue ben soze lasked, if after her conception she haue had dayly and vnwontly her flowzes, yf strayght after one moneth vpon the conception, her brestes yelde any mylke, if the childe stirre not, ne moue at suche tyme as is conuenient for it, these be argumentes and tokens that it shuld be very weake. By what tokens ye shall knowe it is dead, I shall shewe you hereafter.

Also there is great perill in labouring, Perill in the secondine. when the secondine or latter birth is ouer fyne or strong, and wyll not soone rive or breake a sunder, so that the child may haue his easy coming forth. And contrary wyse, when it is ouer weake, slender or thin, so that it breaketh a sunder before that the chylde be turned, or apt to issue forth, for then the humours whiche are collect & gathered together about this secondine or seconde byrth, passe away soner then they shoulde do, & the birth shal lack his due humidities and moistures, which shuld cause it the easelyer to proceede, & with lesse payne.

## The seconde booke.

Excesse of  
heate or cold  
greatly hin-  
dereth the  
labour.

The birth also is hyndered by ouer-  
much colde, or ouermuche heate, for in  
ouermuch colde, the passage and all o-  
ther powers of the labouring woman,  
be coarcted and made narrower then  
they woulde otherwyle be. Lykewyle  
ouer much heate debiliteth, weakeneth  
and faynteth both the woman and the  
chylde, so that neither of them in that  
case, can well weld or helpe them selues  
for fayntnes.

And farther yf the woman haue vled  
to eate comonly suche meate or frutes  
which do exiccate or drie, and constraine  
or binde, as Medlars, Chestnuts, and  
all sowre frutes, as Crabbes, Choke-  
peres, Quinces, and such other, with  
ouer muche vse of Uergeus, and suche  
lyke sowre sauces, with Rife, Gill, and  
many other thinges, al this shall great-  
lye hinder the byrth.

Also the vse of colde bathes after the  
fifth moneth folowying the conception,  
or to bathe in such water where Alome  
is, Iron, or Salt, or any suche thynges  
whiche

Whiche do coarcte and conſtrayne, or yf ſhe haue ben oftentymes heauye and mournyng, or yll at eaſe, or yf ſhe haue ben kepte ouer hungry and thurſtie, or haue vſed ouer much watch and wal- kyng: eyther if ſhe vſed a litle before her labour thinges of great odour, ſmell or ſauour, for ſuche thynges (in many mens opinions) attract and drawe by- ward the mother or Matric, the which is great hynderaunce to the byrth.

Alſo yf the woman feele payne onlye in the backe and aboue the nauell, and not vnder, it is a ſigne of harde labour: lykewyſe if ſhe were wont in tymes paſ- ſed to be deliuered with great payne, is an euidence and lykelyhod of great la- bour alwayes in the birth.

Nowe ſignes and tokens of an expe- dite and eaſy deliuerance, be ſuche as be contrary to all thoſe that haue ben rehearſed before. As for example, when the woman hath ben wont in tymes paſſed eaſyly to be deliuered, and that in her labour ſhe feele but litle thron- g

Tokens of  
eaſy deliue-  
raunce.



## The seconde booke.

oz dolor, oz though she haue great paynes, yet they remayne not styll in the vpper partes, but descende alwayes downewardes to the neather partes oz bottome of the belly.

And to be short, in all painefull and troublesome labours, these signes betoken and signifie good speede and lucke in the labour: vnquietnes, muche stirring of the chylde in the mothers belly, all the thronges and paines tombling in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the woman strong and mightie of nature, such as can wel and strongly helpe her self to the deliuerance of the birch. And againe, euill signes be those, when she sweateth colde sweate, and that her pulces beate and labour ouer soze, and that she her selfe in the labouring faint and solwe, these be vnluckie and mortall signes.

Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe,  
and what remedies be for them  
that haue hard labour.

Capit. iiii.

**D** succour and helpe them that are in such difficult perill of labour, as we haue spoken of before, ye muste obserue, kepe & marke those things that we shal (by the grace of God) shewe you in this Chapter following.

First the woman with chylde muste kepe two diets, the one a moneth before her labour, the other in the very labouring. And aboue al thinges she must eschue & forbear al such occasions which may hynder the birth, to the vttermost of her power, the whiche occasions we rehearsed in the Chapter before. But if there be any such thyng which can not be auoyded, forsomuch as it cometh by nature, or by long continuance and custome in this case: yet ye shal vse some suche remedies, the whiche may somewhat asswage it, molifie it, or make it more easy or tollerable, so that it hinder the birth so much the lesse.

But if it so be, that any infirmitie or disease, swelling, or other apostumatidō

R iij

chaunce

How the labour maye be made more easy.

## The seconde booke.

chance about the mother or the priuie part, or about the vesike or bladder, as the stone, the strangury, and such lyke, the whiche thinges maye cause suche straytnes and coarctation, that vnneth without great and horrible payne, the partie can be deliuered or discharged. In these cases it behoueth such thinges to be looked vnto and cured, before the tyme of labour commeth, by the aduice of some expert Surgion.

Also if the woman be ouermuch constipat or bounde, most commonly she must vse, the moneth before her labour, suche thynges the which may lenifie, mollifie, dissolue, and lose the belly, as apples fryed with suger, taken fastyng in the mornyng, and after that a draught of pure wyne alone, or els tempred with the iuyce of swete and very ripe apples.

Also to eate figges in the mornyng fasting, and at night, loseth well the belly. If these profite not, *Cassia fistula* taken iii. or.iiii. Drams one halfe houre before dyner, shall lose the belly without peril.

Againe

The seconde booke. Fol. lviij.

Agayne, in this case she must refrayne from all such thinges as do harden, re-  
strayne, and constipat, as meates broy-  
led or roasted, and ryce, hard egges, biefe,  
chestnuttess, and all sowre frutes, and  
suche lyke.

Also yf farther necessitie require, she  
may receaue a clyster, but it must be ve-  
ry gentle and easye, made of a pynt of  
the broth of a chickin, or other tender  
fleshe, thereto putting so muche course  
suger or hony, as may make it reasona-  
bly sweete, & halfe a sponefull of Whyte  
salt. Or for the pooze woman maye be  
made a clyster of a pint of water, wher-  
in hath ben sod mallowes or holyoke,  
with hony and salt, as befoze. She may  
vse also some other easie and temperate  
purgation, to molifie and lose her with-  
all, as Mercury sodden with flesh in po-  
tage, and diuers such other, or els a sup-  
positer tempered with sope, larde, or the  
yolkess of egges.

And yf it chaunce that (the labour  
drawing neare) she waxe faynt or sicke-

lye,

Things to  
lose y belly.

with her sweth  
to comfort  
the woman  
in her las-  
bour.

## The seconde booke.

Iye, then must ye comfort her With good comfortable meate, Drinke, holsonie and noble electuaries, and in this time must she do all such thynge the whiche can make her apte and sufficient to her labour, and to vse such thinges the which may laxe, open, and mollifie the nature and passage, so that the byrth maye the more freely proceede, and that chiefly in the younger Women. The elder Women, for because that those partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder, therefore they must vse hoat and moyst thinges, which haue propertie to lenifie and souple, and that both in meate and Drynke, and also in outwarde fomentations, bathynge, suppositoies, and annoyntmentes.

Annoyntmentes  
to souple.

Annoyntmentes wherewith ye may souple the priuie place, be these, Hennes grece, Duckes grece, Goose grece, also oyle Olive, Lineseede oyle, or oyle of Fenegreke, or the viscolite of holpocke, and such other: & for Drynke, let her vse good rype Wine mixed with Water: also  
there

there muste be a consyderation in the dieting of the Woman, that she maye vse suche thynges the Whiche may moysten her, and not make her fatte. Contrarywyle, let her auoyde such thynges the Whiche shoulde exicate, Dnye, constrainne, or coarct her, and that all the moneth befoze her labour. But about ten dayes befoze the tyme (yf she feele anye payne or greefe) let her vse every day to washe or bathe her With warme Water, in the Whiche also that she tarpe not ouerlong in bathyng for Weakning of her, and therein let her stande, so that the Water come aboue the nauyll a litle, and also seathe in the Water Malloves, Holyoke, Camomell, Mercurie, Baydenheyze, Lyneseede, Fenegreke seede, and suche other thynges Whiche haue vertue to mollifie and sofle. And yf it be so, that for Weaknesse of the body she may not endure this bathyng in warme Water, then With a spounge or other cloth dypped in the foresayde bath, let her sokyngly washe her feete, her

Bathes to  
lose & gentile  
lye to open  
the body.

## The seconde booke.

her thyghes, and her priuie partes, the  
Whiche thynges shall greatly profite to  
her. But in such tyme beware ye come  
not in the common hot houses, for they  
would cause you to be feeble and faynt,  
which were yll in this case.

And when ye are thus bathed or wa-  
shed, then shall it be very conuenient for  
you to annoynt with the foresayde gre-  
ces and oyles, your backe, belly, nauyl,  
sydes, and suche places as are neare to  
the priuie partes. Furthermore, it shal-  
be greatly profitable for her to conuey  
inwarde into the priuie part these fores-  
sayd oyles or greeces with a sponge, or  
other thyng made for the purpose, she  
lying byright, the middes of her bodye  
most hiest, so that it maye the better re-  
mayne within her, and that chiefly yf  
the Matrix be drie, other els the partie  
very leane and spare.

It shalbe also very profitable for her to  
suffume the nether places with Muske,  
Ambre, Gallia Muscata, which put on  
embres, yelde a goodly sauour, by the  
which

Annoynt-  
mentes to  
soyle.

Sweete  
fumes.

Whiche the neather places open them-  
selfe, and drawe downeward.

Also as I sayde before, she must take  
good hede to her diet, that she take thin-  
ges the which may comfort and streng-  
then the body, feeding not ouermuch of  
any thing, and to drinke pleasaunt and  
well sauering wine, or other drinke, also  
moderately to exercise the body in doying  
some thing, styring, mouing, goying,  
or standyng, more then otherwyse she  
was wont to do, these thinges farther  
the byrth and make it the easier, and  
this is the maner of diet the which we  
aduisse the woman to kepe the moneth  
before her labour or longer.

Another dyet there is, the which she  
ought to obserue in the tyme of labour,  
when the stormes and thronges begyn  
to come on, and the humours which yet  
hitherto haue remained about the Ma-  
trix or mother collected, nowe begynne  
to flowe forth, and this maner of dyet  
consisteth in two sortes. First that suche  
thinges be procured & had in redinesse,

whiche

What is to  
be done whē  
the time of  
labour is  
come.



## The seconde booke.

Whiche may cause the byrth or labour to be very easy. Secondly to withstand, defende, and to put awaye so neare as may be the instant and present dolours. And as touching this poynt, it shalbe very profitable for her, for the space of an houre to sit still, then (rysing agayne) to go vp and downe a payre of stayres, crying or reachyng so loude as she can, so to styre her selfe.

And also it shalbe verye good for a tyme, to retayne and kepe in her breath, for because that throughe that meanes, the guttes and intrayles be thrust together, and depressed downewarde. Also it shalbe very good to receaue some medicine to prouoke the birth, of the which we wyll speake moze hereafter.

Nowe when the woman perceaueth the Matrix or Mother to waxe laxe or loose, and to be dissolued, and that the humours issue forth in greate plentie, then shal it be meete for her to sit downe leaning backwarde in maner vpryght.

Of the Mid-  
wifes Schoole.

For the which purpose in some regions  
(as

(as in Fraunce & Germany) the Midwifes haue stoles for the nonce, whiche beyng but lowe, and not hye from the grounde, be made so compassewyle and caue or holowe in the middes, that that may be receaued from vnderneath whiche is looked for, and the backe of the stoole leaning backward, receaueth the backe of the woman: the fashion of the whiche stoole, is set in the beginning of the byrth figures hereafter.

And when the tyme of labour is come, in the same stoole ought to be put many clothes or cloutes in the backe of it, the which the Midwife may remoue from one side to another, according as necessitie shall require. The Midwife her selfe shall sit before the labouryng woman, and shall diligentely obserue and wayte, how much, and after what meanes the chylde styrreth it selfe: also shall with her handes, fyrst annoynted with the oyle of Almondes, or the oyle of whyte Lillies, rule and direct euery thing as shall seeme best.

Also

## The seconde booke.

The Mid-  
wyfe must  
geue com-  
fortable  
wordes to  
the partie  
trauayling.

Also the Midwyfe muste enstruct and comfort the partie, not onlye refreshing her with good meate and Drinke, but also with sweete wordes, geuyng her good hope of a spedefull deliuerance, encouraging and enstomakyng her to patience and tollerance, byddyng her to holde in her breath so muche as she may, also strekyng gently with her handes her belly aboue the Nauell, for that helpeth to depresse the byrth downwarde.

But and yf the woman be any thing grosse, fat, or fleshy, it shalbe best for her to lye groueling, for by that meanes the Matrix is thrust and depressed downwarde, annoynting also the priuie partes with the oyle of white Lillies. And yf necessitie require it, let not the Midwyfe be afrayde ne ashamed to handle the places, and to relaxe and loose the straighthes, (for so muche as shall lye in her) for that shal helpe well to the more expedite and quicke labour.

But this muste the Midwyfe aboue  
all

all thynges take heede of that she com-  
pel not the woman to labour befoze the  
byrth come forward, and she we it selfe.  
Foꝛ befoze that tyme, all labour is in  
vayne, labour as much as ye lyste. And  
in this case many tymes it commeth to  
passe, that the partie hath laboured so  
foze befoze the time, that when she shuld  
labour in deede, her might and strength  
is spent befoze in vayne, so that she is  
not now able to helpe her selfe, and that  
is a perrilous case.

To labour  
much befoze  
the due time  
doth but fe-  
ble the wo-  
man, and no  
thing profit

Furthermore, when the Secondine  
oꝛ seconde byrth (in the which the byrth  
is wrapped and conteyned) doth once  
appeare, then maye ye knowe that the  
labour is at hand, wherfoze if the same  
secondine breake not of his owne kinde,  
it shalbe the Midwyfes part and office,  
with her nayles easily and gentellye to  
breake and rent it, oꝛ yf that maye not  
conueniently be done, then rayse vp be-  
twene your fingers a peece of it, and cut  
it of with a payre of sheares, oꝛ sharpe  
knyfe, but so that ye hurt not the byrth

## The second booke.

With the cut. This done, by and by ensueth consequently the flux and flowe of humours, of the whiche I spake before, and then next foloweth immediatlye the byrth.

But yf it so chaunce that the Seconde should be cut by the Hydwyse, and all the watery part issued and spent before due time & necessitie shoulde require it, so that the priuie passage be leste excitate and drye, the byrth not yet appearing, by this meanes the labour should be hindered and letted. In this case ye shall annoynt and molifie that priuie passage with the oyle of Whyte Lyllyes, or some of the greases spoken of before, fyrst warmed, and so conueyed into the priuie partes, the whiche thynge wyll cause the waye to be slyppery, souple, and easie for the birth to passe. But cheefely in these difficulties should profite the Whyte of an egge, together with the yolke powred into the same place, whiche should cause it to be most slypperye and slydyng, and supplie the  
roome

roome of the natural humidities spent before.

And yf it be so, that the byrth be of a great growth, and the head sticke in the commyng forth, then muste the Mydwyfe helpe all that she may, with her hande fyrst annoynted with some oyle, openyng and enlargyng the way, that the issue may be the freer. Lykewyse must be done yf she beare two children at once. And all this is spoken of the naturall byrth, when that fyrst proceedeth the head, and then the rest of the body ordinately, as ye may see in the fyrst of the byrth figures folowing.

The head  
proceedyng  
fyrst.

ii. But when the byrth commeth not naturally, then must the Mydwyfe do all her diligence and payne (if it may be possible) to turne the byrth tenderlye with her annoynted handes, so that it may be reduced agayne to a naturall byrth. As for example: Sometyme it chaunceth the chylde to come the legges & both armes & handes downward, close to the sydes fyrst forth, as appeareth

The legges  
& both handes  
downe,  
proceedyng  
fyrst.

## The second booke.

In the seconde of the byrth figures. In this case the Midwyfe must do all her payne With tender handlyng and annoynting to receaue foorth the chylde, the legges beyng still close together, and the handes likewise remaynyng, as appeareth in the sayde seconde figure.

Howbeit, it were farre better (if it may be done by any possible wayes or meanes) that the Midwyfe shoulde turne these legges commyng fyrst foorth, vppwardes agayne by the bellywarde, so that the head myght descende downewardes by the backe part of the wombe, for then naturallie agayne and without peryll myght it proceede and come foorth as the fyrst.

The third  
of the byrth  
figures.

iii. Agayne sometyme the byrth cometh forth With both legges and feete first, the handes beyng lysted vp aboue the head of the chylde, and this is the perillouste maner of birth that is, as appeareth in the third of the birth figures. And here must the Midwyfe do what she may to turne the byrth (yf it may be possi-

possible) to the first figure, and yf it wyll not be, then reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to reduce it into the seconde figure. But yf this also wyll not be, then receaue the feete as they come forth, and bynde them with some fayre linnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softly lose out the byrth tyll all be come forth, and this is a very ieopardous labour.

iiii. Also sometyme the byrth cometh forth with one foote onlye, the other being left vpwarde, as appeareth in the fourth figure. And in this case it behoueth the labouryng woman to lay her vpryght vppon her backe, holdyng by her thyghes & belly, so that her head be the lower part of her bodye, then let the Midwyfe with her hande returne in agayne the foote that cometh out first, in as tender maner as may be, and warne the woman that laboureth to styre and moue her selfe, so that by the mouyng and styryng, the byrth maye be turned the head downeward, and so

The fourth figure.



## The second booke.

to make a naturall byrth of it, and then to set the woman in the stooke agayne, and to do as ye dyd in the fyrste figure. But yf it be so, that notwithstanding the mothers styrryng and mouyng, the byrth do not turne, then must the Midwyfe with her hande softely fetch out the other legge whiche remayned behynde, evermore takyng heede of this, that by handlyng of the chylde, she do not remoue ne set out of theyr place the two handes hangyng downewarde towards the feete.

The fyfth figure.

v. Lyke wyse sometyme it commeth to passe, that the syde of the chylde commeth forwarde, as appeareth in the. v. figure, and then must the Midwyfe do so, that it may be returned to his naturall fassion, and so to come forth.

The sixth figure.

vi. Also sometyme the chylde commeth forth the feete forwarde, the legges beyng abroad, as in the. vi. figure, and then must the Midwife see, that the feete and legges may be ioyned together, and so to proceede and come forth,  
ever-

euermore regardyng the handes, as I warned you before.

vii. If it come With one of the knees The .vii. figure.  
or both forwarde, as in the .vii. figure,  
then must the Midwyfe put vp the  
birth, til such times as the legges & feete  
come ryght forth, & then to do as afoze.

viii. When the chylde cometh head-  
long, one of the handes commyng out The cyght figure.  
and appearyng before, as in the .viii. fi-  
gure, then let the byrth proceede no far-  
ther, but let the Midwyfe put in her  
hande, and tenderly by the shoulders  
thruste in the byrth agayne, so that the  
hand may be resettled in his place, and  
the byrth to come foorth ordynately and  
naturally, as in the fyrst figure: But yf  
by this meanes the hande come not to  
his conuenient place, then let the wo-  
man lye vpryght With her thyghes and  
belly vpwordes, and her head downe-  
wardes, so that by that meanes it may  
be brought to passe, and then byng her  
to her seate agayne.

ix. But yf it proceede With bothe The ninth figure.  
L iiii handes

## The second Booke.

handes forwardes, then muste ye lyke-  
wise do as afore, by the shoulders thru-  
sting it backe agayne, vntyll suche tyme  
as the hands lye close to the sides, & so to  
come forth, as appeareth in the .ix. figure.

The .x. fi-  
gure.

x. But when it commeth arswarde,  
as in the .x. figure may be seene, then  
must the Mydwife with her handes re-  
turne it agayne, vntyll suche tyme that  
the birth be turned, the legges and feete  
forwarde: other els, yf it maye be so, it  
were best that the head might come for-  
warde, and so naturally to proceede.

The .xi. fi-  
gure.

xi. And yf so be that it appeare and  
come forth first with the shoulders, as  
in the .xi. figure, then must ye fayre and  
softlye thrust it backe agayne by the  
shoulders, tyll suche tyme as the head  
come forwarde.

The .xii. fi-  
gure.

xii. But when the byrth commeth  
foorth with both the handes and both  
the feete at once, as in the .xii. figure,  
then must the Mydwife tenderly take  
the chylde by the head, and returne the  
legges vpwarde, & so to receaue it forth.

xiii. And

xiii. And when it commeth brestward The. xiii. figure.  
as in the. xiii. figure, the legges and hand-  
des bydyng behynde, then let the Mid-  
wyfe take it by the feete or by the head,  
whiche that shalbe mooste apt and com-  
modious to come forwarde, retornyng  
the rest byward, & so to receave it forth:  
but if it may be hedling, that shalbe best.

xiiii. Nowe sometyne it chaunceth The. xiiii. figure.  
the woman to haue two at a burthen, &  
that both proceede together headlong,  
as in the. xiiii. figure, and then must the  
Midwyfe receave the one after the o-  
ther, but so, that she let not slyppe the  
one, whylest she taketh the fyrst.

xv. If both come foorth at once with  
theyr feete forward, then must the Mid-  
wyfe be very diligent to receave first the  
one, and then the other, as hath ben she-  
wed befoze. The. xv. figure.

xvi. When the one commeth head-  
long, the other foote wyse, then must the The. xvi. figure.  
Midwyfe helpe the byrth that is mooste  
nearest the issue, and if that commeth  
footelong (if she can) to returne it vppon  
the

## The second Booke.

the head, as is spoken of before, takyng ever heede that the one be not noysome to the other in receauyng foorth of eyther of them.

And to be short, let the Mydwyfe often tymes annoynt & mollifie the Waye and passage with some of the foresayde oyntmentes, to make the womans labour so muche the easier, and haue the lesse tranayle and payne. And yf there chaunce to be any Apostume or disease about those places in this tyme, by suche annoyntyng to alaye and swage the payne, so that for the tyme it may be the lesse greefe to the partie, as I spake before also. And for them that be in this case, it shalbe best to lye grouelyng, as I sayde of the grosse, fatte, and fleshy woman.

Remedies and medicines by the which the labour may be made moze tollerable, easy, and without great payne.

Cap. v.

The

**T**he thynges whiche helpe the  
birth & make it more easie, are  
these. First the woman that  
laboureth muste eyther sytte  
groueling, or els vpright, leaning back-  
warde, accordyng as it shall seeme com-  
modious and necessary to the partie, or  
as she is accustomed. And in wynter or  
colde weather, the chamber wherein she  
laboureth must be warmed, but in som-  
mer or hotte wether, let in the aire to re-  
freshe her withall, lest betwene extreme  
heate and labour the woman faynt and  
sowne. And furthermore, she must be  
prouoked to sneesyng, and that eyther  
with the powder of Eleborus, or els of  
peper. Also the sydes of the woman  
must be stroken downewarde with the  
handes, which thyng helpeth greatly &  
furthereth. And let the Midwyfe al-  
waye be very diligent, prouidyng and  
seing what shalbe necessary for the wo-  
man, annoyntyng the priuities with  
oyle, or other suche greace as I spake of  
befoze, in this fashon.

Meanes to  
helpe & pro-  
uoke the  
byrth.

The

## The second booke.

A good mol-  
lifying oint-  
ment.

Take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes or Duckes grese, & with that temper two graynes wayght of Saffron, and one grayne of Huske, and therewith annoynt the secrete partes. If this profite nothyng, then vse this suffumigation.

Take Myrthe, Galbanum, Castorium, let those be beaten, and make lyke pylls of them, tempered together with bulles gall: then take a dram of these pylls, and put it on hoate coales, and let the woman receaue the fume and sauour of it vnderneath.

Another perfume: Take yelowe byrnstone, myrthe, Mader, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, of ech lyke much, and temper al those together, making of them pylls, and with those also ye may make fume, to be receaued vnderneath.

Item, the fume of Culuer'dung, or of Haukes dung, by puttyng to of Oppoponacum, is soueraigne for the same. All these fumes open the poores beneath, and causeth nature to be the freer in delyueraunce.

Also it is very good to dyp woll in the iuyce of Rue, and the same to conuey into the secretes. Also the powder of Aristolochia rotunda, or the roote called Bothor martis, Ciclaminus, or malum terre, or the seede of Stauisagre, any of these wrapped in woll, and conueyed inwarde, prouoketh and calleth forth the byrth.

Item take Helcborus, Oppoponacum, & wrap them together in wooll, and minister them inwarde, for that will byrning forth and prouoke the birth, whether it be alyue or dead. Also the  
rynde

The second booke. Fol. lxxviii.

rynde and barke called Cassia lignea beaten to powder, and tempered with wine and drunken, prouoketh well the byrth.

Item Asa fetida, of the bygnes and wayght of a pease, mingled together with Castorium of the wayght of a dram, beaten together and tempered with wine myxt with water, and so drunken, is very good to prouoke the byrth. Also Canell drunke with wine is very good.

Item, take a scruple of Roses, with the water of the seede of fenegreke, Cicercula, Maydenhayre, all beaten together and sodden, and the oyle of blewe flouredeluce, a small quantitie tempered therewithall, and then geue it to the woman that laboureth, and it shall prouoke the byrth greatly. And Cassia lignea and Asa fetida drunke with wine, be very good for the same.

Also Holyoke sodden in canduite water and drunken, is soueraigne for the same purpose, and it is berye good for her to washe her in the water in the which this Holyoke is decocte and sodden.

Item, certayne pylles the whiche make the labour easie and without payne.

Take Canell, or Cinamome, and Sauiue, of eche a dram, of Cassia lignea a dram and a halfe, of Myrthe, Aristolochia rotunda, & Costus amarus, of ech a dram, of Storax liquida halfe a dram, and of Oppium the waight of. xii. graynes, beate these altogether, & fournie them into pylles, and geue vnto the woman two drammes of these pylles  
with



## The second booke.

with two ounces of good olde wine.

Item Saffron and Syler montanum prouoketh the byrth of any lyuyng thyng, yf it be drunken: howbeit to a woman geue neuer passyng a dram at once of Saffron, for greater quantitie should greatly hurt.

Item, take .v. drammes of Sauine, of Rue or hearbe grace one dragma and a halfe, of Juniper beryes two drams, of Asa fetida, Amoniacū, Madder, of eache two drammes, of these make pylls, geuen to the woman in labour, with water in the which is sodden Sauine and Peni-riall, or els with the broth of Cicercula, and the iuyce of Rue shall helpe very greatly.

Item, take two drammes of Sauine, of Asa fetida, Amoniacum and Madder, of eache halfe a dram, these temper together in pylls, and geue her with wine one dram of the same.

Item, take of Aristolochia longa, Pepper, and Myrre, of eche lyke muche, confict them together with wine, and make pylls of them, and minister them with an ounce of water of the decoction of Lupines, these pylls be of suche efficacy and strength, that it alleuiateth and bypasseth the byrth, it deliuereth the Matrix or Mother from all maner of byrth, be it aloue or dead.

Item, take of whyte Bedellium, Myrre, and Sauine, of eche lyke muche, temper these with Cassia lignea, and Hony, and make pylls of them to the bygnesse of Peason, and of these pylls geue at ech tyme fiue to the labouryng woman,  
which

The second booke. Fol. lxx.

whiche be of the same myght and strength, that the other pyllies spoken of here next before are.

Item, take of Myrre, Castorium, and Storax, of eche one dram, temper them with Hony, and make pyllies of it: these for this purpose excel and passe all other, they be of such vertue and strength in operation.

A plaster to prouoke the byrth.

Take wilde Cowarde, and seethe it in water, in the same water temper Myrre, the iuyce of Rue, and Barlye meale, so much as shalbe sufficient, stampe these thynges together, and make it plaster wyse, then lay it to the womans bellye betweene the Nauyll and the nether part: This plaster shall helpe marueylously.

And although many other thynges there be which haue vertue and power to prouoke birth, and to helpe it, yet leauyng all suche thynges for breuitie and shortnesse, we haue set here only a certayne, whose efficacie and power shalbe sufficient to this present purpose.

Howe

The second booke.

How the secondine or second birth

shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come not  
freely of his owne kynde.

Cap. v.



Ere also sometime it com-  
meth to passe, that the Se-  
condine whiche is wont to  
come together with the  
byrth, remayne and carye  
behynde, and folowe not, and that for  
diuers causes. One is, for because per-  
adventure the woman hath ben so sore  
weakened and feeblished with trauaile,  
doulour and payne of that fyrst byrth,  
that she hath no strength remaynyng  
to helpe her selfe, to the expellyng of the  
seconde byrth. Another may be, that it  
be entangled, tyed, or let within the ma-  
trix (whiche chaunceth many tymes)  
or that it be destitute of humors, so that  
the water be flowen from it sooner  
then time is, whiche shoulde make the  
places more slipperie and more easie to  
passe thoroowe: Or els that the places  
ouer weeryed with long & sore labour,  
for

for payne contract or gather together, and enclose them selfe agayne, or that the places be swolne for anguise and payne, and so let the comming forth of the seconde byrth.

But to be short, of whatsoener cause it be thus stopped, the Bydwylfe in any wyse muste fynde such meanes, that it may be vnloosed and expelled. For othervyse, great inconueniencie shoulde chaunce to the partie, & specially suffocation and choking of the Matrix, whiche also must so much the moze be taken hede to, for because the seconde byrth retayned and kept within, wyll soone putrifie and rot, whereof wil ensue ill noysome & pestiferous vapours ascendyng to the heart, the braynes, & the midriffe, through the which meanes the woman shalbe short winded, faynte hearted, often sounding, and lying without anye maner of mouyng or styrryng in the pulces: yea, and many times is playnely suffocated, strangled, and dead of it.

wherefore that none of these thinges  
Mi happen

## The seconde booke.

happen, With all diligence and payne it muste be prouided that the secondine be expelled.

Retention  
of flowres  
for weake-  
nesse.

If retention of it come by Weakenesse of the labourer, through long trauayle, then must she be recomforted & strengthened With good comfortable meates and drinckes Which may enheart her, as broath made of the yolcke of Egges, or With good olde Wine, and good fat and tidie fleshe, or Byrdes, Hennes flesh, Capons, Partridge, Piggins and such lyke.

And yf retention of this secondine come, because the place is contract together agayne, eyther els that the Matrix is swollen for long paine, then must be vled suche thinges to prouoke it out, the Whiche do make the Way slipper, soyle, & easie for it to proceede, With the oyles or ointmentes spoken of before, as oyle of Whyte Lillies, of *Maiorum*, and of blewe Lillies.

Item, the beries of Juniper, or Galbanū beaten to powder and dronke With luke Warmed Wine, Wyll cause the same to  
issue

issue out.

Item, Sothernwood, or els Penitrial  
sodden in Wyne, and the decoction dron-  
ken, is of the same vertue.

Item to suffume the secretes With  
the perfumes Written of before, is good  
for this purpose, and the vapour of the  
Water in Whiche Gallowes, Holyoke,  
and Berefoote be sodden, receaued be-  
neath, is lyke good.

Also to Washe that partes in Water  
in Whiche is sodden byanne, or to holde  
a litle bagge full of sodden byanne to  
the place, and therewithall to soke the  
place, is very profitable.

But yf the retention of the secondine  
come by reason that it is entangled or  
fastened in some place of the matrix, so  
that it Wyll not resolue ne loose, then  
make a fume vnderneath of brimstone,  
Iuie leaues, and Cresses, or els of Cres-  
ses and Fygges.

Also of all odoriferous and sweete  
smelling thinges, as Ambre, Muske,  
Frankencense, Gallia Muscata, and confec-  
tion

The seconde booke.

tion neare, the which sauoures and per-  
fumes put on the embers, muste be so  
closely receiued vnderneath, that no part  
of the smell do ascende to the nose of the  
Woman. For to the nose shoulde the sa-  
uoure of nothing come, but only of such  
thinges, the which stinke, or haue abho-  
minable smel, as *Afa ferita*, *Castoriū*, mans  
hayre or womans hayre burnt, Pe-  
cockes fethers burnt. Item, in this case  
it shalbe very good to make a perfume  
vnderneath, of the houe of an asse, which  
thinges although they be of yll sauour,  
yet they be of suche nature and efficacie,  
that they occasionate not onlye the se-  
condine, but also dead byrthes to pro-  
ceede and come forth out of the Matrix.

And in this case also let the woman  
holde her bzeath inwarde so muche as  
she can, for that shall dryue downward  
suche thynges as be in the body to be  
expelled.

Item, let her be prouoked to sneese  
with the powder of *Eleborus* or *Pepper*  
put in the nose, holding her mouth and  
nose

nose so close as may be.

Also the oyntment whiche is called Vnguentum Basilicon conueyed into y<sup>e</sup> matrix, is very good, for it mollifieth the place, and draweth out the secondine perforce, the which so sone as it is expelled, infuse the oyle of Roses into the same matrix. Item Rose water tempered with a quantitie of the powder of Holyoke, and dronke, is good to expell the secondine.

And yf it be so that any parte of the secondine do appeare, let the Midwyfe receaue it tenderlye, loosing it out fayre and softly lest it breake, and if ye doubt that it wil breake, then let the Midwife tye that parte of the which she hath handfast, to the womans legge or foote, not very strayght lest it breake, neyther very laxe lest it slip in agayne, and then cause her to sneese. Nowe yf the secondine tary or sticke, so that it come not quicklye forwarde, then loose it a litle and a litle very tenderly, wreathing it from one side to another, tyll such tyme



## The seconde booke.

as it be gotten out, but euer beware of  
violent and hasty mouing of it, lest that  
with the seconde byrth ye remoue the  
Matrix also.

And yf in this meane whyle the wo-  
man faynt oz lowne by reason of greate  
payne ensuyng of the takyng awaye of  
this secondine, then must ye minister  
such thinges to her the which comforte  
the head & the heart, as be electuaries  
which are confict with Muske, Ambze,  
and the confection of precious stones,  
as Diamargariton, and suche other. Also  
suche thinges the whiche comfort the  
stomacke, as Diagalanga, Dia cinamomum, &  
such lyke, whiche are alwaye in a redy-  
nesse at the Apothecaries, the whiche  
also she shall receaue with wine.

Item to remoue the secondine, & to ex-  
pel it, take Rue, Horehounde, Sothern-  
wood, and Motherwurte, of eche lyke  
quantitie, and then take so much of the  
oyle of Lyllyes, as may be sufficient to  
steepe, moysten, and soke the foresayde  
hearbes

herbes in, put all this together into a glased potte, couered with suche a couer that it haue a litle hole or venter aboue in the toppe of it, and sette this potte ouer the fyre of coales, so that it boyle a litle whyle, then take it from the fyre, & set it vnder the stoole where the woman sitteth, made for the nonce, hauyng a pype made for the purpose, of the whiche the one ende ye shall put into the venter or hole of the couer of the pot, and the other ende must the partie receaue into her body, and so to sit closed rounde about with clothes, that no vapour or ayre go forth of the potte, hauyng a fewe coles vnder it to kepe it hotte: and thus sitte the space of an houre or two, tyll suche tyme as the seconde moue or begyn to proceade of his owne kynde.

And yf it be so that ye profite not this wayes, yet then laye this plaster on the belly betweene the nauyll and the secretes, of the which we shall speake  
¶ **Diij** hereafter,

The seconde booke.

Hereafter, the which is of suche operati-  
on and efficacie, that it expelleth dead  
birthes. If for al this y<sup>e</sup> secondine come  
not forwarde, then leaue it, and vse no  
more medicines ne remedies to that  
purpose, but let it alone, for within few  
dayes it wyll putrifie and corrupt, and  
dissolue vnto a watery substance, thicke  
lyke bryne oz other sex mixed with wa-  
ter, and so issue forth. Howbeit, in the  
meane whyle it wyll put the woman to  
great paine in the head, in the heart, &  
in the stomacke, as we touched before.

**C**howe that many thinges chaunce to  
the women after their labour, and howe  
to auoyde, defende, oz to remedie the  
same. Cap. vi.

**I**t is also to be vnderstanded  
that many times after the de-  
liueraunce, happeneth to wo-  
men other y<sup>e</sup> feuer oz ague, oz  
swelling, oz inflation of the body, other  
tumblyng in the belly, oz els commoti-  
on oz settelyng out of order of the Mo-  
ther

ther or Matrix. Cause of the whiche things, is sometimes lacke of due and sufficient purgation and cleansing of the flowres after the birth, or els contrarywise ouermuch flowyng of the same, which soze doth weaken the woman. Also the great labour and styring of the Matrix in the byrth.

Then as oft as it commeth for lacke of due purgation of the flowres, there muste be ministred suche thynges the which may prouoke the same, whether it be by medicines taken at the mouth, or by lotion and washing of the feete, or by fumes, or odour, or emplastration, or by decoction of herbes seruing to that purpose, or els by oyntmentes, and such other things, accordyng as the person or the perill doth require, of the whiche things fewe or no women be ignozant. And ye must take diligent hede that she be exactly and vtterly purged, to this be agreable all suche simples the whiche prouoke brine, and open the vaynes, makyng free way for the blood to passe  
and

The seconde booke.

and sende the humours and matter downward, as Motherwort, Asarum, Sauiue, Peniriall, Parcely, Charuyl, Annis seede, Fenell seede, Juniper berries, Rue, Bay berries, Germaunder, Valerian, Tymie, Cinamome, Spike-narde, and such other. Al those things as they do prouoke and cause vrine, so do they also prouoke & cause the flowres to depart. Howbeit, as neare as ye can, vse none of these things without the counsaile of an experte Phisition, lest whylest ye helpe one place, ye hurt another. Also to sneese, helpeth muche to this matter, & to holde in the breath, enclosing the nose and the mouth. Also fumigation made of the eyes of salte fyshes, or of the houe of a horse vnderneath, prouoketh the flowres. If ye profite not by this meanes, then being able to beare it, let her blood in the vaine called Saphina, vnder the ancles of the feete, for this prouoketh flowres cheefely of all other thynges.

Lykewyle do, yf the woman haue the  
ague

ague after her labour, for that cometh of like cause by retention of the flowres, and in the feuer let her vse to drinke Water, in the which is decocte Barley beaten, or Cicer and barley together, or Water in which be sodden Tamarindi, or Whay of mylke, and let her eate a cullis made of a Cocks, and sweete Pomegranates, for these thinges do prouoke the flowres, and mittigateth the immoderate heate, refreshing greatly the body, loosyng and opening suche thinges the which befoze were constricted and cluddered together.

For the ague in women with chylde.

If the body after labour do swell and inflate, then let her drinke Water, in the which is sodden Cicer & Cummin, beaten together.

Item good olde wine with the electuarie called Diaciminum, or of Trochiskes of Alkechergie, otherwyle called Halicacabus.

Also in this case a clyster made of suche thinges the which do banquishe and expell ventosities and wyndynesse, as Annis seede, fenell seede, Rue the hearbe and the seede, Bay berries,

Cum

## The seconde booke.

cummin, &c. Also a pessarie or suppositar made for that part of Aristolochia Rotunda, Squinantum, Storax Liquida, Dorenicum, Zeduaria.

Agayne, yf the woman after her labour haue frettyng and gnawynge of the guttes and payne of the Matrix, and other secrete partes there about, then let her vse the vapour and fume of suche thinges the whiche haue vertue to mitigate, swage, and alay the payne, as Malloves, Holyoke, Fenegreke, Comin, Camomell, and Sauine. Of these also make emplasters and bagges, the whiche may be applied to the payned places.

Also to annoynt y<sup>e</sup> places with Oleum sesaminū (yf it were to be had) or with oyle of sweete Almondcs. And yf no greate heate do abounde in the woman, she maye drinke Triacle, or Trifera magna, with wine in whiche is decoct Motherwort or Huggewort.

Also agaynst payne in the priuie partes, take Beniri<sup>all</sup>, Policaria, sixe leaues of baye tree, seeth them together, and receaue the vapour vnderneath closely.

Item, take Rue, red Motherwort, Sothernwood, beate them together, and temper them with the oyle of Beniri<sup>all</sup>, and put all together into a pot, and set it ouer the fyre a whyle tyll it be some what sodden together, and then take it of agayne, & put it into a litle rounde linnen bagge made for the purpose, the whiche with these hearbes in it, ye shall conuey into the secretes.

Item, take Camomel and Lyne, of eche lyke much.

The seconde booke. Fol. lxxvi.

muche. iiii. handfulls, bray them together, and seethe them with white wine, and then put it in a rounde bag of linnen, as before was done, and conuay it into the womans priuie partes.

Item, let her drinke for the same purpose, two graynes of muske with wine.

Item, take whyte Onions, and couer them vnder the hote ashes, the whiche when they be well roasted, beate them together with freshe Butter vn salted, and make it in maner of a plaster, and then put it in a linnen bagge, and conuay it into the places, as before: in the meane while perfumyng the priuie partes with whyte Frankencence and Storax.

If it be so that the woman be vexed about the backe and loynes after her labour, take Camomell and Buggewort, of eche two handfulls, of Wormewood, Sothernwood, of eche one handfull, or Motherwort three handfulls, of Cinamome and Nutmegges beaten small halfe an ounce, decoct all these thinges together, and in the water of this decoction beyng warme, dyp a sponge or other linnen clothes, fomenting, sokyng, and strekyng the backe with the same, and so do oftentimes, or els put all these foresayde herbes together sodden in a bagge, and lay it plaster wyse to the backe.

If this profite not, take oyle Rardine, oyle of whyte Lillies, of eche an ounce and an halfe, to the whiche put a dram of Nutmegges beaten to small powder, with this annoynt the backe.

Item, take oyle of Anete, oyle of Camomell,  
of



## The seconde booke.

of eche an ounce, Oyle of whyte Lillies two ounces, of Ware two drams, disolue all these together ouer the fyre, and therewith annoynt the backe.

What remedies whē the flowres issue more abundantlye then nedeth.

But yf after the labour the flowres issue more vehemently, and in greater aboundaunce then they shoulde, to the great esseoblyshing of the woman, and inducing of much langour and paynefulness, then fyrst shal ye note wherebypon it commeth: for the cause known, the disease may the more redyly be cured, and causes of it be diuers, but mooste especiall those that folowe, that is to say: Of much aboundaunt superfluous blood contayned in the whole body, or of much commixtion of the colericke humour and the blood together, by the whiche the blood is enfired and chaufed, and so distendeth, openeth, and setteth abroad the baynes whiche descende to the Matrix.

Also the blood beyng very thyn and waterish, for so it penetrateth, chilleth, and issueth forth the sooner. Also yf the baynes be very large, and receiue much blood,

blood, for in that case they sende forth  
the more agayne. And yf the Matrix be  
vnnightie and Weakened, the baynes  
lyke wylse are weake and large, so that  
they cannot retayne nor withhold the  
blood.

Also if the body of the woman, or the  
outwarde partes be very dence, close, &  
compact together, so that the outward  
pores be contract and shutte, in suche  
wylse that no vapours or swet can issue  
out at them, then this shall cause the yll  
humours (whiche otherwylse woulde  
passe through the pores in swet) to re-  
mayne within the bodye, and there to  
engender and encrease great fluxe and  
aboundaunce of matter, whiche procee-  
deth with the flowres, and augmenteth  
the quantitie of them.

Also yf the baynes of the Matrix be  
(by some chaunce) open and flow forth,  
as yf the Matrix be perished or other-  
wylse viciate: Or yf it chaunce that  
the woman haue hadde a fall, or hath  
ben thruste, or beaten, by all and any  
of

## The seconde booke.

of this meanes may come this inordi-  
nate flure of flowres.

Good coun-  
sell to the  
woman.

Nowe seying then that it ensueth by  
so manyfold occasions and causes, it  
shalbe mete that women in this case be  
nothing ashamed ne abashed to disclose  
their minde vnto expert Physitians, shew-  
ing them euery thyng in it, as they  
knowe wherebpon it shoulde come, so  
that the Physition vnderstandyng the  
Womans mynde, may the sooner by his  
learnynge and experience consyder the  
true cause of it, and the very remedye  
to amende it. And many thinges there  
be which cease and restrayne this over-  
much flowyng of flowres, both Electu-  
aries, Confections, Trochiskes, Pou-  
ders, Clysters, Oodours, Suffumiga-  
tions, Bathes, Plasters, and Dynt-  
mentes, of whiche for the loue of wo-  
men I wyl here set forth the most prin-  
cipall and best.

ffyrst then to stinte and restrayne the outra-  
gious flure of flowres, it shalbe very good to  
binde the armes strayght and strongly, and not  
the feete or handes, as some vnwylle men do  
teache

The second booke. Fol. lxxvlii.

teache, and then to sette a ventose bore, or cup-  
pyng glasse with fyre (which is called boryng)  
vnder the breastes, without any scarification,  
laying also linnen clothes dypped in vineger  
on the belly betweene the Nauyll and the secre-  
tes, conueying also into the places suche thynges  
whiche haue vertue to restrayne blood, as the  
flowre and rynde of Pomegranate, Ambre, Terra  
Sigillata, Bole Armeniacke, Sanguis Draconis,  
Hematites, the red Rose, whyte frankencense, &  
galles, all those things, or as many of them as ye  
can conueniently get, beate them to powder in  
lyke portion, and temper them with redde wine,  
makynge of it a plaster, the whiche so tempered,  
put into a lytle rounde bagge, the quantitie of a  
mans thumbe, the whiche she shall put into the  
priuie partes.

¶ Item another plaster, to be ministred lykewyse.

Take of the blood stone called Emathites, Bole  
Armeniack, of ech halfe an ounce, Sanguis draco-  
nis, Licium, of eche two drams, Karabe, otherwise  
named Ambre, the cuppes of Acornes, Cipres  
tree Nuttes, flowres of Pomegranade, of eche  
one dram, of the scales of Iron one dramme and  
a halfe, Turpentine and Bitche lyke quantitie,  
or so muche as shalbe sufficient to make a softe  
and somewhat liquid plaster, beate and braye  
all these together, temperyng it to a plaster, and  
then do with it, as ye dyd with the other before.

¶ An oyntment for the same purpose.

¶ Take oyle Martine, oyle of Roses, of eche  
foure ounces, Karabe, the scrapyng of Iuery, the  
scrapyng

Ri

scrapyng

## The second booke.

Scraping of a goates horne, redde Corall, Terra sigillata, whyte frankencense, of eche (beyng well and fynely beaten) two drams, of whyte ware two ounces: all those tempered together, make them in an oyntment, and there with annoynte the wombe and the secretes.

¶ A bath concernyng the same.

Take Wormewood, Plantane the moze and the lesse, the toppes of Vines, freshe braunches of wylde Mulberies, or of the bramble, burype Damassons, Sloes, or Bolasse, wylde Peares, Medlers or Hyspylles, of eche thre handfulls, of red rose leaues two handfulls, of Daisies, of all sortes of Thystles, of eche two handfulls, of Cinckfoyle the leaues and rootes, Tormentyll the rootes, Colubyne, of eche an handfull: Also of Acorne cuppes a sawcer full, of Gaules, of Acones pylled, of Bursa pastoris, of eche two handfulls, beate all these to powder, cutting and brusyng that that will not be beaten to powder, and seethe them together in rayne water, or els in water in the which ten or twelue burnt flynt stones haue ben quenched. This done, let the woman bath her selfe in this water by to the Nauyll, and when she cometh forth of the bath, geue her to drynke two drammes of Electuarium Athanasie, or Miclete, with Plantane water, or yf she be sore thirstie, with red wyne.

And lyke wyle ye maye geue to her of these electuaries that folowe. Take good olde roose Suger two ounces, of red Corall, burnt Iuery, Bole Armeniacke, of eche two drams, of Hema-

tites

The second booke. Fol. lxxix.

tites three drammes: beate all these thynges together, temperyng it with the roose Suger, and let her receaue of it in the Mornyng and Euenyng, at eche time one dramme, with .vi. spoonefulles of Plantane water, or els the water of Bursa pastoris.

Item, take of the stone Emathites, and rub it on a Barbers whetstone, called a hone, tyll the hone seeme red, then washe it agayne from the hone with Plantane water, and so do oftentimes, vntyll thou haue a good quantitie of it, and euery Mornyng let the woman drynke. iiii. or .v. spoonefulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of Carabe, or Ambre, and the Trochiskes of Bole armeniacke, whiche must be ministred a dramme or more of eyther of them, with .iiii. or .v. spoonefulles of Plantane water.

Who that requireth farther in this matter, let them aske counsaile of the Physitions.

Nowe yf it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other disease in the priuie places after her labour, then muste the Apostumes and diseases be clensted, purged, and healed, the payne & ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berryes or leaues of Night-

Rij

shade,

The second booke.

Shade, and the iuyce of Plantane, also the oyle of Roses, so that all those thynges be tempered together and the places annoynted therewith.

Item other wyse. Take the white of an egge, womans mylke, the iuyce of Purslane, and temper al these together, and conuey it to the diseased place.

These medicines do refrigerate & coole the vehement heate wont to be in Apostumes. As for the rest, howe to open, drie, and cleanse such Apostumations, ye must consult with some Physition or expert Surgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the fundament gutte commeth forth both in man and woman, and specially in women in this busines, by reason of theyr great labour and stryuyng with them selfe: wherfore in this case it is the Wydwyfes parte, with her hande warmed and wet in whyte wyne, to reduce it backe into his place agayne, the which yf she can not by this meanes, for because peradventure it be swollē, then  
let

Let her dissolue butter in Whyte Wyne warmed, and therein dip Woll, with the which Wrappe the same gutte a Whyle, so doying often tymes tyll it be swaged, that it may be returned in agayne. And ye may vse in the steade of Whyte Wine, luke warme milke.

And when it is thus returned and reduced into his place: Take ware, and melt it together with Masticke or whyte frankencense: then spreade it vpon linnen plasterwyle, and laye it ouer the place where it came foorth, byndyng it to with a linnen cloth or roller, for partying of. And let this be done thus so often as she goeth to stoole, after that she hath done, vntyll such tyme that it be so settled within, that it come no more out.

And yf ye wyll not occupie ware, then dyppe woll in the oyle of Masticke, or of Spyke Hardy, and laye it vnto the place ouer the fundement, byndyng it fast vpon the place, as before.

Item another way. Washe and soke the gutt with the water in whiche is decocte and sodden such thynges which exicate, drye, and constryne or combynde: as Galles, Cipres nuttes, flowres of Pomegranade, Ambre, Masticke, Franckencense, Sanguis draconis: and when it is wel washed and soaked with this water, then take the powder of an Hartes horne burnt, and strue it rounde about the gutte, and so restore it agayne



## The second booke.

into his place.

Agayne, sometyne it commeth to passe, that after the womans labour the Matrix is remoued out of his place, and appeareth forth: Then let it be washed and soaked with the water in whiche be sodden these thynges folowynge.

Take of Cipres nuts, Spyke narde, Balauftium, Acorne cuppes, of eche an ounce, of Mespyles, and vnrype wyld Beares, and vnrype Apples, Plummes, and Damsons or Bollasse, of eche a handefull. And suche of those as be to be powdered, beate them to powder, and the rest diuide and cut them small, then seeth them all together in rayne water, or els in water in the whiche steele beyng redde hotte, hath ben oftentimes quenched, and in the same water let the partie bathe her by to the Nauyll: or els dyppe a sponge or a Locke of woll in it, and therewith washe and soke the same Matrix oftentimes. Then euer with a fayre cleane linnen cloth wpye it cleane agayne, and strewe vpon it the powder folowynge, beaten very small, and searsed through sylke.

Take of frankencense, Carabe, Galles, Balauftium, Cipres nuttes, Alome, Antimoni, Bole Armeniacke, Masticke, of eche lyke muche, beate all these to berye fyne powder, and strewe the Matrix with it, then tenderly reduce it into his place agayne with warme linnen clothes, byndyng it  
bp.

The second booke. Fol. lxxxvi.

bp. But yf so be that the Matrix be swollen, so that by this meanes it wyll not be restored to his naturall place agayne, then dissolue butter in white wine, as ye dyd before, and with the same soke it, vnto such tyme as it be swaged, and then reduce it.

Agayne, sometyme it chaunceth that the womans Nauyll through labour is dissolved, so that it openeth it selfe: then make a small tent of fine linnen, and annoynt it with this oyntment that followeth, & the same put into the Nauyll.

Remedies  
for the wo-  
mans nauil,  
when it o-  
peneth it  
selfe for  
payne in the  
labour.

Take whyte frankencense, and beate it to powder, and then temper it with the whyte of an egge, so that it be after the maner of liquid honye, with this annoynt the Nauyll within and without, annoynting also the tente, the which being put in the hole of the Nauyl, binde some cloth ouer it to kepe it in his place.

Item, many tymes it chaunceth that thow the great difficultie & thronges of labour, the priue part and the fundament become one, by reason of rupture and breakyng of the same parte in the delyueraunce of the chylde, and that by that meanes the Matrix descendeth and issueth downe, the whiche thyng chaunceth sometymes, by reason that

Howe that  
sometime  
the priue  
part & fun-  
dament be-  
come one,

## The second Booke.

the same place is very narrowe, and also tender, and the byrth bygge & of great growth, so that it proceedeth with such violence, that it breaketh the way before it.

When this mishappe falleth, fyrste washe and soke the Matrix, and also reduce it to his place agayne, after the maner as I tolde you here immediatly before: then heale this bracke & wounde by sowyng of both sydes of it together agayne with a sylken threede, as Chirurgions do other woundes, and if that lyke ye not, then may ye cure it otherwyle without sowyng, thus.

Take two lyttle peeces of linnen cloth, eche of the length of the wounde, and in breadth two fyngers broade, spreade the lytle clothes with some fast cleauyng plaster, the which wyll cause the cloutes to stycke fast where they shalbe set: then fasten them, the one on the one syde of the rift, the other on the other syde, so that nothyng appeare betweene the peeces of linnen in the myddes of them, but only the clyfte and ryfte of the wounde in the breadth of a strawe. Then (this done) sowe the sydes of the linnen together close, as before I byd you to sowe the skyn, and when they be thus styched together, lay a lytle

The second booke. Fol. lxxxii

lytle liquid pitch or tarre upon the seame. And this done, the lappes and sydes of the wounde vnder the linnen plaster wyll growe together agayne and heale, and then may ye remoue your plasters.

¶ Item another way.

Take Camfely dyled, and beate it to powder, also a lytle quantitie of Cinamome beaten to powder, ioyne them together, and strow of this powder into the wounde, and without fault it shall heale.

¶ Of aboꝛcementes, or vntymely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen and eased.

Cap. vii.



Aborcement, or vntymelye birth, is when the woman is deliuered before due season, and before the fruite be ripe (as in the.iii. iii. or v. moneth) before the byrth haue lyfe: and sometymes after it hath lyfe it is delyuered before it stirre, being by some chaunce dead in the mothers wombe. Of the whiche thynges there be many and diuers causes.

Many causes of vntymely byrthes.

Fyrst, sometymes the mouth of the Matrix

The second Booke.

Matrix is so large and ample, that it can not conveniently close it selfe together, neither conteine the feature or conception: Or els it may be so corrupted & infected with viscos, slymye, fleumatycke, and other waterythe humours, that the cavitie or holownesse thereof is thereby made so slypperye, that the feature conceaued can not there remayne, but slyppeth and slydeth foorth agayne. Also sometymes the Matrix is apostumated and sore, so that for payne it can not contayne the conception.

and laeol  
glauy  
adicyd

Item, sometymes the Cotilidons, that is the baynes by the which the conception and feature is tyed and fastened in the Matrix (thorowe the which also the feature receaueth nourishment and foode, as is declared in the fyrst booke) be stopped with viscos & yll humours, or els swollen by inflasion, so that they breake, by the whiche meanes, the feature destitute of his wont nourishment, perysheth and dyeth, & that most commonly in the second and thirde moneth after

after

after conception. Wherfore Hipocrates sayth : All such Women Whiche be impregnate or conceaued, being of a meane state in theyr body (that is to say, nether to fatte or grosse, ne to spare or leane) yf it chaunce any suche to abozce in the seconde or thirde moneth (no other euident cause appear yng) knowe ye for certaine, that it ensueth for because the Cotilidons be opplete, stopped and stuffed with yll humours, and be swollen and puffed therewith that they breake: and so consequentye the feature dyeth for fault of foode.

Item, abozcement sometyme cometh by reason that some of the places about the Matrix be diseased and grieued, as yf *Intestinum rectum*, Whiche is called the fundement gut, be vicerate, hauyng the pyles or Hemorroides: or the visick or bladder be swollen or encubred with the stone, the strangury, or other euil. In these cases through the great labour & paine the which the partie hath in endeuoring & enforcing her self other

Abozcemeēt  
by reason of  
some greese  
about the  
Matrix.

to

The second booke.

to stoole, or to make Water, be engendered great motions downward, whereby manye tymes the handfastnes of the Cotilidons is broken.

Aborcement  
by Tenas-  
mus.

Also aborcement maye come of a disease called Tenasmus, the which is when one hath euer great desyre and luste to the stoole, and yet can do nothyng, nevertheless the parties greatlye do enforce and payne them selfe to it. And as Hipocrates saith, the p̄gnaunt woman which hath Tenasmus, for the most parte abhorceth, that is to say, bringeth forth her chylde out of tyme.

Aborcement  
through the  
cough.

Item the cough, if it be greuous, causeth the same. And as the forenamed excellent Physition sayth, suche as are very spare and leane, and brought low, evermore lyghtly do aborree, for because that all the meate and foode the whiche they receave, turneth to foode, nourishment, and restauration of theyr owne bodyes, and so is the conception destitute of foode, wherefore necessarye it dyeth.

Item

The second booke. Fol. lxxxiii.

Item, this chaunce also commeth by ouermuch bleedynge at the nose, or other where, or issuyng of the flowres immoderately. And so sayth Hypocrates, yf the woman yeeld flowres after her conception, it can not be that the feature do long proue, the whiche saying must be vnderstande, yf they flowe vehemently, or that the partie be weake and verye spare, or yf it be after the thyrde moneth, for it may be well, that in the fyrst and seconde moneth flowres may issue, and yet no daunger. For as yet lytle foode and noyrishment satisfieth the conception for the smalenesse thereof.

Item, to be let blood may be the cause of abozement, whiche must be vnderstande, in suche as haue but lytle store of blood: but such as haue great copie and plentie of blood, may without any peryll (if any vrgent cause require it) be let blood, so that it be after the fourth moneth, and before the seventh. Howbeit, I would that none should be let blood, except some great and wayghtie cause  
dyd



## The second booke.

dyd require it.

Item, it may come by taking of some strong purgation before the fourth moneth, and after the seventh moneth.

And yf it be so that any necessitie do so require that she must needes receave a purgation, let it be done betweene the fourth and the seventh moneth after the conception, for then may it be with least peryll. And see that the purgation be very gentle and easie.

Also this may come by reason of a continuall fluxe, be it blooddye or otherwyle, and specialle yf the woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conception is greatly weakened and peryshed. Also ouermuch vometyng may be cause of abozement, for by ouermuch galpyng and reachyng vpwardes, the Cotilidons may be broken, and so the feature to peryshe.

Item, ouermuch famine or hunger and also sharpe and feruent sycknesse may be the cause thereof, as the pestilence, apostume in the brest, and sodayne pallsie,

palsye, the falling sycknesse. &c. Also ouermuch drunkennes, and excesse feeding and surfetting, by the whiche the byrth is suffocate and strangled in the belly, and the foode corrupt for lacke of due digestion.

Item, if the birth be sicke by any outward or inward cause, or yf the Seconde in the which the featur is conteyned, do breake before his tyme, and the humours and waters of the same flow & issue forth, causing the place to be slipperry, and so the birth to slide away butimely: Or yf the mother haue taken very great cold, or ouer great heat, whiche weakeneth both mother and chylde.

And therefore ought women with chylde to excheue much bathing or going to the hot houses in theyr teemyng, for that may do hurt three wayes.

Fyrste, that it kyndleth or enflameth the ayre or breath conteyned in the body, and so styfleth the chylde, and sometyme the mother to.

Secondly, that it relaxeth, dissolueth, & looseth

Handwritten marginal notes in a smaller script, partially illegible.

## The second booke.

looseth the Cotilidons, and so maketh the byrth to issue forth. Thirdly, that the vtter heate of the bath, encrease the inwarde heate of the body: In so much, that the byrth not beyng able to sustayne and abyde the heate, naturally proceedeth for refrigeration and cooling: but in the tyme or about the tyme of labour, she may vse bathes, as I declared before, for the redyer and more expedite delyueraunce.

Cause of a  
bozement  
by mutati  
on of the  
weather.

Item, the intemperancie and mutation of the ayre and weather, may be cause of abozement. For (as Hypocrates writeth) Whensoever the Wynter is hot and moyste, and the spryng tyde after colde & drye, such women in that spryng tyde may soone & of a lyght cause haue abozement: Or yf they aboze not, yet they shalbe deliuered with great payne, and the birch shalbe very weake & sicklye, so that it shall dye strayght, or yf it dye not by and by, it shal proue but very slenderly. The cause of the which thing is this.

For

The seconde booke. Fol. lxxxvi.

For when that suche Wynteryng chaunceth, the hoate and moyste weather heateth & moysteth the womans body, & by that the bodye is opened, vnloosed, & resolued, no lesse then though she were euery day bathed, and vppon this when the spring time commeth, yf it be colde and dnye, findyng the body open and vnloosed after suche sorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the sooner & the more vehemently: and the byrth feeling the sodayne colde and chaunge of weather, pineth away, and dieth in the Mothers belly, or anone after it is deliuered: or yf it lyue, it lyketh not, nor proueth not, and great payne shall it be to kepe life in it.

Item, aborcement may happen by ouer muche styring of the body in labouryng, daunsyng, or leaping, or by some fall or thrust agaynst some wall, or beatyng, or by some sodain anger, feare, dread, sorowe, or some sodayne and vnlookedfor ioy. Thus haue I rehearsed all the causes of the whiche moste commonly

## The seconde booke.

monly maye ensue aboꝛcement oꝛ vn-  
tymely byꝛth, the whiche no doubt is  
much moze grieffe and payne to the wo-  
man, then the very naturall labour, foꝛ  
such thinges as chaunce to man oꝛ wo-  
man contrarye to nature, oꝛ befoze na-  
ture doeth require it, is farre greater  
greefe, then the same happenyng and  
comming in his due season.

¶ Signes whereby ye may foꝛesee aboꝛcement.

Tokens to  
foꝛesee a  
boꝛcement.



¶ When the woman shall labour  
befoze her tyme, these signes  
are wont to go befoze. First  
her bꝛests which befoze were  
hole, sounde, & full, shall begin to ware  
lesse, to fall, and to flagge, and then euer  
foꝛ the most part aboꝛcement foloweth.  
But if it be so that she go with two chil-  
dren at once, if one of the bꝛests swage,  
whiche befoze was in good lykynge, the  
other remaynyng sounde and safe, then  
loke of what side the bꝛest is of, and the  
chylde of that syde is in perill. where-  
foze Hipocrates wꝛyteth, yf the ryght  
bꝛest flake oꝛ flagge, the masculine oꝛ  
male

male byrth is in perill: yf the left, the female byrth, because that for the moſte part when there be two at once, the one is masculine, and the other feminine: the man lyeth in the ryght ſyde, and the woman in the left moſt commonly.

Alſo another ſigne of aborcement is, when the woman hath great paynes and dolours of the Matrix, & that ſhe begyn to waxe red in the face, and all partes of the bodye to ſhake & tremble, as though it were in a feuer, or the palſey in the head. Item when ſhe feeleth great ache in the inner part of the eyes toward the braines, the reſt of the body taken as it were with a Werynes without any outward apparant cauſe, why theſe thinges portende and ſignifie aborcement to be at hande, ſpecially yf at the ſame time the flowres iſſue alſo.

Item, yf the womans bodye do ſwell and inflate with a certayne hardeneſſe or ſtyfeneſſe, and that ſhe feele ſitches, and as it were ventofitie or Wynde, runnyng from one ſyde of the bodye

## The seconde booke.

to the other, and yet the belly not With-  
standyng, beyng nothyng the more  
ponderous or wayghtie, and that the  
same inflation do persist and continue a-  
nye Whyle, the Woman taking and ea-  
tyng suche thinges whiche haue ver-  
tue to discusse and vanquish the vento-  
sitie and Wyndynesse: this thyng I  
saye doeth betoken perill of aborze-  
ment through ventositie and infla-  
tion, and that chiefly about the thirde  
or fourth moneth after the concepti-  
on.

Thus haue I sufficiently declared  
euidēt and sufficient signes, whereby  
may be prouided and foreseene the a-  
borcement before it come. Nowe Wyl I  
shew you the remedies wherby it may  
be auerted and let.

Remedies  
whereby to  
auoyde a-  
borcement.

The cheefe remedie to auoide aborze-  
ment is, to shun all such thinges which  
may be cause of it, the whiche I haue  
competently entreated of already: but  
yf ye feare aborcement, because that the  
mouth of the matrix be ouer ample and  
large,

large, then must ye vse suche thynges whose operation is to constrahe, constraayne, and bring together, as Bathes, Fumigations, Oyntmentes, Plasters, Oodours, and suche lyke, of the whiche I haue spoken before, and such thynges the which repressse and stynte the flow-ers flowyng ouer muche after the byrth.

Agayne, yf ye feare this peryll, because the mouth of the Matrix is moyst and slipperie, other because that the cotilidons be replete and fulfylled with viscos humours, and with inflations, or ventosities: then may ye defende it by vsing of suche thynges whose qualities be to purifie, clense, exicate, or drye, and to repressse ventosities, whereof also we haue made mention here before.

Howbeit, in all this matter, let not to make some expert Physicion of your counsaile, yf ye may haue such one, for because that many suche thynges come, and not all by one way or meane.

And yf ye doubtte peryll for because



The seconde booke.

that the Matrix or other places about  
be infected, exulcerated, or apostumate,  
or hauyng the stone or strangury, and  
suche other thynges: then aske and vse  
the aduise of some well learned medi-  
cine, and he shall shewe you howe all  
thynges shalbe recured.

If agayne ye feare aborcement be-  
cause the partie is very weake and low  
brought, then let her feede on such thin-  
ges the whiche moysten and nouryche  
wel, or fatten y<sup>e</sup> body, as Capons flethe,  
Kid, Lamme, young Ueale, Partridge,  
and such other.

Agayne, yf the woman be taken with  
any sharpe and fell disease, then let her  
be cured of the same as shortly as can  
be, with such thinges the which apper-  
tayne to the curyng of such disease: or yf  
she haue susteyned any long famine or  
hunger, then let her be fedde with good  
meates and drinckes moderately taken:  
and yf she haue surfetted by ouermuch  
eatynge and drynkyng ( as nowe a-  
dayes most commonly people do ) then  
let

let her abstayne for a tyme, and if it may be conuenientlye done, let her receaue some easy and gentle medicine, whiche maye alleuiate and lyghten her of her surfetting burthen, especially by vomitting, for the whiche purpose, geue her halfe a pynt of water luke warme, wherin hath ben sodden two sponesfuls of clarified hony, and then afterwarde yf it come not of it selfe, with her fynger or with a fether put into her throte, let her prouoke her selfe to vomite.

Nowe yf it be so that the woman abounde in blood, then shall it be very good a litle to let her blood, both for her selfe, and also for the birth, whiche thowrover ouer muche aboundaunce of it, myght happen to be suffocated & strangeled: of the whiche thing also I haue spoken largely befoze.

Furthermore, yf the woman feare abozement, by reason of continuall cough, or ouermuche vomite and parbreakyng, or the fluxe, or of y<sup>e</sup> disease called Tenasmus, or of ouermuche istayng

## The seconde booke.

of blood, Whether it be by the nose, or other partes of the body, aske the aduise of a Physition for remedie, yf for the fragilitie, tenderesse, and bracke of the secondine, she feare this abozement, for because that in this case the secondine shall not be able to holde and contayne the byrth. As for this, there is no other medicine to defende it, but only that the partie take heede that she hurt not her selfe by ouermuch mouing or stirryng, as by labouryng, daunsing, runnyng, standyng, faste goyng, or carryng of ponderous and wayghtie thinges, or lystyng of the same. And to be short, let her with all warynesse take heede and be diligent that she excheue and abstayne from all suche thynges the whiche myght cause and induce abozement.

Of dead birthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, and by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix.

It

**I**shalbe nowe conuenient for vs to speake of dead birthes, howe it shalbe knowen that they be dead, and howe they may be expelled from the mother.

Signes to know whether the childe be dead in the mothers wombe.

Signes then that the byrth is dead in the mothers wombe, be these.

- i. Fyrst, yf the mothers brestes do suddenly flake, as I touched before.
- ii. If it moue it selfe no more, beyng wont before to styre.
- iii. If when the mother turneth her from the one side to y other, she feele it falling from thone side to the other like a stone or a dead wayght.
- iiii. If her belly and nauyll begyn to ware colde, which before was wont to be temperately hotte.
- v. If any stynkyng and fylthye humours flowe from the Matrix, and cheefely after some fell disease.
- vi. If the womans eyes ware holow, & that her colour chaunge from whyte to swart and dunne colour, and that her eyes and nose ware astonyed, and haue

33. The seconde booke.

have not their ryght vse, and her lippes  
Ware wanne.

vii. If beneath the Nauell and about  
the secrete partes she feele great throng  
& payne, the colour of her face chaunge-  
yng into worse and worse, otherwyle  
then it was wont to do.

viii. If she haue appetite to eate suche  
things whiche be agaynst nature, and  
not wont to be eaten or drunken.

ix. If she be in her sleepe vexed with  
bayne and terrible dreames.

x. If she be payned continuallye with  
the strangurye, or that she enforce her  
selfe much to the stoole, and with al her  
power, and yet can not do any thing.

xi. If her breath begin to stynke, the  
whiche thing lightly happeneth two  
or three dayes after the birth be dead.

xii. If her handes put into very warme  
water, and then layde on the womans  
belly, and the childe stirre not, is a signe  
that it is dead.

Of all these signes nowbe, the more  
that come together of them at one  
time

tyme and in one person, the surer may  
ye be that the birch is dead, the whiche  
beyng once dead, all diligence muste be  
hadde that it may be expelled out of the  
Womans body.

But here must ye see agayne whether  
it may be expelled, the Mothers lyfe sa-  
ued or no: for sometime it chaunceth  
that the Mother dyeth withall, and  
sometimes the Mother doth well and  
prospereth.

Whether the Mother shalbe in perill  
withall, or no, by these thinges shall  
ye knowe. If the Woman beyng in the  
labour sowne or feare, as though she  
were in a trance: if her remembraunce  
fayle her, and she were feeble and scant  
able to moue or stirre her selfe: yf she  
(called with a loude voyce) can aun-  
swere nothyng at all, or els very lit-  
tle, and that very softly, as though her  
voyce began to fayle her: if she be inua-  
ded or taken among in the labouryng  
with conuulsion or chynkelyng toge-  
ther: if she refuse or cannot broke meate:

To knowe  
whether the  
mother shal  
be in perill  
or no.

yf

## The seconde booke.

yf her pulces beate very fast, the which signes when ye see in y<sup>e</sup> woman labouryng, it is an evident token that she shall not lyue long after her deliuerance, wherfoze commit the cure of her to the handes of almyghtie God: but yf none of these signes do appeare, then haue good hope, for the woman shall do wel, the byrth beyng once departed: wherfoze geue all diligence to the expulsion of it, that the woman maye be deliuered of this dead burthen, the whiche thyng maye be done by two wayes, eyther by medicines expulsive, or els by certayne instrumentes made for the nonce.

Two meanes to expel dead birthes

fyyste without instrumentes, with this fumigation. Take eyther the houe or dongue of an Ass, and put it on coles, and let the woman receaue the fume vnderneath.

¶ Another.

Take the skinne of an Adder, Myrre, Castoriū, Brynstone, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, Madder that the Diers occupie, Pigeōs donge, or Hawkes donge, beate al these to powder, & temper the with Dre gal, & make pylls of it, eche the quantitie of a fylberde nutte, and then put one after another

another in the coales, and receaue the fume thorough a pipe or conduite made for that purpose into the priuities.

Another. Take Encense, Oppoponacum, Galbanum, Brimstone, of eche lyke muche, beate them together, and temper them with Dre gall, and make pilles of them, and then of the same make fumigations, as before.

A potion for the same purpose. Take Afa fetida, halfe a dram, of Rue three drams, of Myrre two drams, and beate them to powder, and geue to the woman at eche tyme a dram of this powder with white wine, or with water in the whiche Sauiue is sodden.

Another. Take figges, Fenegreke, Organnie, and seethe them in water, the whiche geue vnto the woman to drinke: for this drynke wyll engender lubricitie and slippernes in the neather partes, and vse also some of those thinges which haue vertue to prouoke the byrth, whereof we entreated before.

Item, certayne pessaries or suppositaries concerning the same. Take Gumme, Ammoniacke, Oppoponacum, Heliborus niger, Staphisager, Aristolochia longa, and Colocinthis without his kernels, beate all these thinges together, tempering them with Dre gall, and also with the iuice of fresh Rue, then make a pessarie of wollen, and annoynt and wete the pessarie with the same, conuaying it into the secreete places.

Item another. Make a pessarie of wollen, of the length and thichnesse of a finger, and dippe  
it



## The seconde booke.

It in the iuyce of Rue in the whiche is dissolved a quantitie of Scammorie, and do with that pessarie, as before.

Item, take Aristolochia rotunda, Sawine, garden Cresses, of eche lyke muche, beate them to powder, and temper them with Oxe gall, with this annoynt a pessarie made and ordered as before is spoken of.

Item, yf the woman drynke the mylke of another woman, it wyll styre and expell the byrth.

Item, take of the iuyce of Dittayne, or of the powder of the roote of the same hearbe two dramms, and geue the same to drynke to the woman with wine, except she be in great heate, for then shall ye geue it her with luke warme water, and this shall expell the dead byrth without anye peryll of the Mother.

Item, take of Myrthe foure drammes, of Cinnamon, Galbanum, Castorium, of eche two dramms, of Oppopocacum, one dramme, all those beaten & tempered together with Oxe gal, make pilles of them, waying eche of them a dramme, and with the fume of those, perfume the neather partes, by this vapour the dead birth is brought forth, inflation and suffocation of blood is expelled.

Item, take of water Minte, Sothern wood. Mugwurt, of eche a handful, of Asphaltum halfe an ounce, of Madder, two ounces and an halfe, of Camomell, Horehounde, Fenegreke, of eche two ounces, seethe all these thinges together in  
rain

raine water, in the whiche let the woman bathe her selfe: then take of Hennes greace and Duckes greace, of eche foure drammes, to the whiche ad two ounces of oyle of Byll seede, with this oynment annoynt the womans head commyng out of the bathe, then take Date stones, and beate them to powder a dramme and an halfe, with a scruple of Saffron tempered together with white wine, the whiche let her immediately drinke after she come forth of the bathe.

Item, take Oppoponacum, and make thereof a pessarye the quantitie of a synger, conuaye it into the priuities, this expelleth the deadde byrth.

Item, take of Galbanum a dram or some what lesse, of Goates mylke an ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, in the whiche the Galbanum being dissolved, geue it to the woman to drynke.

Item, a plaster for the same. Take Galbanum, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Mother-wurt, and of this make a plaster by putting to of ware a certayne quantitie: then take a linnen cloth of suche length and breadth that it may couer all the belly vnder the Nauell to the priuities, from one syde to the other, on this clothe spreade this plaster of the thiknesse of a strawe, and lay it to the belly.

Item, take the Triacle whiche is called Diastellarum, & geue of it to the woman for to drinke, and it wyl expell the dead byrth.

But yf all these medicines profite not, then  
must

## The seconde booke.

musse be bled more seuerer and harde remedies with instrumentes, as hokes, tongues, and such other thynges made for the nonce. And fyyst the woman musse be layde a long byryght, the middle part of her bodye lying hier then all the rest, companyed of women assisting her about, to comfort her, and to kepe her downe, that when the byrth is plucked out, she ryse not withall. Then let the Midwyfe annoynt her lefte hande with the oyle of whyte Lillies, or other that maye make it soople and smothe, and holding out her fingers shutting together her hand, let her put it into the Matrix to feele and perceaue after what fashion the dead byrth lyeth in the Mothers wombe, so that she may the better put in hokes, and suche other instrumentes to plucke it out withall.

Yf so be that it lye the head forwarde, then fasten a hooke eyther vppon one of the eyes of it, or the roose of the mouth, or vnder the chin, or on one of the shoulders, which of these partes shall seeme mooste commodious and handsome to take it out by, and the hooke fastened, to drawe it out very tenderlye for hurtyng of the woman.

But yf it lye the feete forwarde, then fasten the hooke on the bone aboue the priuie partes, or by some rybbe, or some of the backe bones, or of the brest bones: and when this hooke is thus fastened, the Midwyfe may not by and by drawe and plucke at it, but holdyng it in her lefte hande

The second booke. Fol. xciiii.

hande, let her with her ryght hande fasten another in some other parte of the byrth, ryght agaynst the fyrst, and then tenderly let her drawe both together, so that the byrth may proceede and come forth on both sydes equally, mouyng it from one syde to another, tyll ye haue gotten out altogether, and nowe and then to helpe it in the commyng forth with the foresynger well annoynted, yf it chaunce to stycke, or to be lette any where: and as it commeth forth, alwaye to remoue the hookes farther and farther on the dead byrth.

Agayne, yf it chaunce that one of the handes onely of the byrth do appeare, and that it can not conueniently be reduced and returned bywarde agayne, by reason of the narrownesse of the place, then bynde it with a linnen cloth that it slyp not by agayne, and then to plucke it outwarde vntyll such tyme that the whole arme be out, and then with a sharpe knyfe cutte it of from the body, and euen so do yf both handes appeare fyrst at once, or one legge, or both, yf they can not be returned backe to be otherwyle taken out conuenientlye. As ye cutte the armes from the shoulders, so lykewyle cuttyng the legges from the thygges, for the whiche purpose the Chyrurgions haue meete instrumentes made for the nonce, with the which suche legges and armes may soone be cut fro the body. These partes beyng once resecte and cutte from the bodye, then turne the rest, so that it maye easlye proceede with as lytle payne to the mother as  
P i maye

## The second booke.

may be.

If it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swelling, or resort of humours, that it wyll not conveniently issue out at that narrow places: Then let the Mydwylfe with a sharpe penknife cutte open the head, that the humours conteyned in it may issue and runne forth, and so the head to waxe lesse, able to be plucked out: But yf it be so, that not by anye suche casualtie the head be bygge, but onlye of a naturall growth, then muste the head be broken in peeces, and the partes euermore taken forth with suche instrumentes as the Chirurgions haue redy and necessarye for suche purposes.

Agayne, yf that after the head were come forth, yet the breast part woulde not folowe for greatnesse: Then must ye breake and cut lykewylse that part, vnto suche tyme that it may be had forth. And euen so lykewylse yf all the reste of the body shoulde be so swollen that it woulde not proceede ne come forth: then muste it lykewylse be broken in peeces, and so had forth.

Farthermore, yf by chaunce or disease it come to passe, that the mouth of the Matrix be exulcerate or appostumate, so that the passage be made the narrower by that meanes, the dryer, and the more contract: then must ye fyrst studye and endeuour you to soople and ease the places by oyles and other greaces, suche as I spake of sufficiently before in the fourth Chapter, with bathes and fumigations.

Also

The second booke. Fol. rcb.

Also yf the dead byrth come sydelong, then must ye do what maye be done to conuerte and turne it to suche fashion, that it may moſte eaſylye be brought forth. The Matrix and other ſecretes muſt be annoynted, perfumed, and vapoured with ſuch thinges the which may make it more anple and large. If it can not be thus had forth whole, then let it be cutte out by peece meale, as is before ſpoken of. And yf after this delyueraunce the flowres iſſue ouer vehemently, then vſe ſuche thinges as haue vertue to reſtrayne them, of the whiche I haue ſpoken in the .vi. Chapter before.

But contrarye to all this, yf it chaunce that the womian in her labour dye, and the chyldre hauyng lyfe in it: then ſhall it be meete to kepe open the womans mouth, and alſo the neather places, ſo that the chyldre may by that meanes both receaue and alſo expell ayre and breath, whiche otherwyſe myght be ſtopped, to the deſtruction of the chyldre. And then to turne her on the leſte ſyde, and there to cut her open, and ſo take out the chyldre. They that be borne

after this faſhion are called Ceſars, for be-  
cauſe they be cutte out of theyr mothers

belly: whereupon alſo the noble  
Romayne Ceſar the fyrſte  
toke his name.

**Pii** **C**

## The second booke.

**I**n the last Chapter of this booke be breefely recited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the cheefe purpose entended in this present booke. Cap. r.



Asomuche as the principall entent and ende of this booke is, to shewe the meanes and medicines whereby the womans labour may be made the more easie: therefore here I wyll compendiously set foorth certayne medicines, oyntmentes, and emplasters, suche as shalbe sufficient and mooste requisite to that purpose, and suche agayne as hath ben well experimented and practised: The whiche also it shalbe convenient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in a redynesse agaynst theyr tyme of neede. For although that nature be the cheefe and head doer in all this busynesse, (as in conception, bearyng, and the byrth:) yet notwithstanding, medicines many tymes do helpe, ayde, and fortifie nature, beyng sometyme impedit and lette, yea, impotent and not able to do her office as shoulde appertayne.

When the tyme then of the womans labour is come, yf she labour long and paynesfully, and yet the byrth do not proceede: then for the more expedite and quicke delyueraunce, geue her of this medicine folowng.

**T**ake of the fynest Cinamome that may be chosen

The second booke. Fol. xcvi.

chosen. iiii. drammes, and with a sharpe knyfe fyrst shyred it in very small peeces, and then beate it to very fyne powder.

Item of Saffron dzyed by the fyre tyll it be blackyshe, of Cassia lignea, fyne Reubarde, Sawine dzyed, Myrre, of eche of these seuen scruples, of pure Muske. xvi. graynes, euery of these simples exquisitely by them selues powdred, and then perfectly myxed in one, with .vi. oz. vii. droppes of Maluesey, temper the whole masse into lyttle roundels or trochiskes, eche waying a dramme. And in tyme of neede at the womans labour, geue her hardly the wayght of. vi. d. of these trochiskes beaten into fyne powder, with. iiii. sponesfulles of Hylope water, and other. iiii. of good wine secke.

This midicine is not onlye profitable at this tyme to prouoke the byrth, but also is notablie good to expell the after byrth, or anye other suche lyke matter in that place, hauyng neede of expulstion.

Item, yf neede do so require, it shalbe very expedient to haue this emplaster solowynge, in a redynesse, the which spread abroad vpon a linnen cloth, either els vpon leather, and so applyed to the bottome of the bellye in as large maner as maye be, dilateth and openeth the pores of that partes, amplifieth, enlargeth, and dissolueth them, whereby that that is contayned in the bellye fyndeth the freer issue, to the lesse greouaunce of the mother.

Take of Emplastrum de Melliloto, of Diachilon, of

℞ iiii

Oxycroceum,



## The second booke.

Oxyroceum, of eche two ounces, of the rootes of Asarum, of wyld Pepper dzyed, the leaues of Bemiioim, of tosted Cummin, of eche two dragmes, of good Castorium, iii. dragmes, of the oyle of Wyll one or two spoonefulles: such of these as are to be powdred, beate them fyne, and then ouer a soft fyre temper them altogether perfectly.

Item, the same emplaster may serue to be layde ouer all the bottome of the beilye and the priuie passage, to prouoke and drawe foorth the latter or hynder byrth yf neede be: But yf that be not strong enough, then lay to this plaster following, whiche is of muche moze efficacie, force, and strength.

Take of Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum, Myrre, of eche an ounce, of Colloquintida, Heleborus niger, of eche two drams, of Castorium, Perethrum, and Storax liquida, of eche three drammes, of Turpentine and Petroleum, of eche foure drammes. Fyrst ouer a soft fyre temper the Turpentine, Petroleum, and Storax liquida, together, then thereto adde Colloquintida, Heleborus, Castorium and Perethrum, beyng fyrst well and finely beaten to powder: after put to the Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum and Myrre, beyng fyrst dissolued in good Maluesey, and so take it from the fyre, and labour it with your handes. This plaster is of great effect to prouoke the after byrth.

Item, vnset Leekes stamped and fryed with butter, and so layed plaster wyse to the belly serueth well for the same.

Item,

The second booke. Fol. xcviij.

Item, the leaues or flowres of Marygoldes drunke with whyte wine, expell the after byrth. Also the sayde leaues and flowres dyed, and at tyme of neede, kyndeled with a ware candle, and the fume thereof receaued vnderneath into the priuie part, prouoketh out merueylously the after byrth.

¶ Item a comfortable potion, to be taken after the deliuerance of the chyld.

Take of the sweetest garden Myntes, greene or dye, of the leaues of Baume greene also or dye, of the leaues of Maioram, the rootes of fenell the pyth taken out, the flowres of Buglos, of Rosemarie, of Ruds, of Borage, and of dyed red Rose leaues, of eche of these halfe a handfull, more or lesse as it pleaseeth you, of Cloues and Mase brused a lyttle, the wayght of two pence, of Cinamome shredde in small portions the wayght of. vi. grotes, knyrt all these together in a cloute or lyttle linnen bagge, and hange the same bagge in a quart of Borage water the space of a daye and a nyghte: then take out the sayde bagge, and reserue the water, of the whiche take one halfe, and the other halfe of pure wine Secke, or els Muscadell: and beyng myxt together, put thereto a lyttle of the conserue of Barberies, conserue of Borage flowres, conserue of Rosemarie flowres, and drynke hereof euerye day the space of foure or fyue dayes, at once foure spoonefulles of the water, and other foure of the foresayde wyne. And this potion shall both comfozte the woman, and also helpe  
P iiii greatly

## The second booke.

greatly to the expulcion of all noysome thynges to be expelled.

And here it is worthy to be noted, that where as it is a common vsage to geue often to women in theyr chyldre bed cawdels of Otemeale, thynkyng and saying thereby the woman to be scoured, whereas in deede the sayde Otemeale is a notable bynder and dryer: Therefore ye shall vnderstand, that the ryght vse thereof is, to geue it to suche as haue alreedy ben well and sufficientlye scoured and cleansed from theyr after byrth, and other thynges to be looked for in this tyme and case: but yf the woman be not sufficientlye purged alreedy, then geue her no Otemeale cawdels, ne other thynges that may bynde.

And thus I make an ende, praying the women readers hereof, to accept and suffise them selues with these fewe medicines here in this Chapter mentioned, and often by me and other practised. The which thyng yf they shall do so, it shall (no doubt) be occasion to me the sooner to retake this matter in hande agayne, and to refreshe and furnyssh the same with newe and much more excellent experiences then hath ben yet hytherto read or seene in any booke concerning such matters.

And as touchyng the aboue Trochiskes and emplasters described here in this place, ye shall fynde them alwayes redye made in

Woucklers berie in  
London.

In this first Chapter of the thyꝛde booke,  
is fyrst declared the matters therein conteyned,  
and then howe the Infant newly boꝛne  
must be handled, noꝛyshed and  
looked to. Cap. i.



In the second booke what is to  
be done  
when the  
chylde is  
boꝛne.  
We haue sufficient-  
lye and at length  
declared the ma-  
ners, fashions, and  
diuersities of byꝛ-  
thes, with the daũ-  
gers and perylles  
often chaunsing to

the Women at theyꝛ labours, and after  
the same. And nowe here in this thyꝛd  
booke shalbe entreated what is to be  
done to the infant boꝛne. And howe to  
chose a Nurse, & of her office: With ma-  
nyfolde medicines, & remedies agaynst  
sundrye infirmities, which estsones hap-  
pen to Infantes in theyꝛ infansie.

Then after that the Infant is once come to  
lyght, by and by the Nauyll muste be cutte thꝛee  
fyngers breadth from the belly, and so knytte vp,  
and let be strued on the head of that that remay-  
neth, of the powder of Bole armeniacke, and San-  
guis draconis, Sarcocola, Myrre, and Cummin,  
of eche lyke muche beaten to powder: then vpon  
that

## The chyldre booke.

that bynde a peece of woll, dypped in oyle Olive that the powder fall not of. Some vse fyrste to knyght the Nauyll, and after to cutte it so much, as is before rehearsed.

And farthermore some saye, that of what length the reste of the Nauyll is left, of the same length shal the chyldes tong be, if it be a man child. Itē Auicenna saith, that diuers things may be knowen by markyng of the chyldes Nauyll: For (as he sayth) When the woman is deliuered of her first chyld, then behold the Nauyl of the child: which yf in that part of it which is next vnto the body it haue neuer a wrinkle, it protendeth and doth signifie perpetuall fruit thenceforth sterilitie or barrenesse: and yf it haue any wryncles in it: then so manye wryncles, so many chyldren shal the woman haue in time to come. Also some ad to this, and say, that if there be litle space betwene these wryncles in the nauil, the shal there be also litle space betwene the bearyng of the children: if muche, it signifieth long tyme betweene the bearing of them: but these sayinges be neither in the Gospell of the day, ne of the nyght.

Howe

The thyrde booke. Fol. ccc.

Nowe to returne to our purpose, when that the Nauyll is cut of, and the rest knytte by: annoynt all the chyldes bodye with the oyle of Acomes, for that is singularly good to confyrme, stedfast, and to defende the body from noysome thynges, whiche maye chaunce from without, as smoke, colde, and suche other thynges: whiche yf the Infante be greued withall straight after the birth, beyng yet verye tender, it shoulde hurte it greatly.

After this annoyntyng, washe the Infante with warme water, and with your fynger (the nayle beyng pared) open the chyldes nolethryles, and purge them of the fylthynesse. And also that the Nurse handle so the chyldes syttyng place, that it may be prouoked to purge the bellye. And cheefely it must be defended from ouermuch colde, or ouermuch heate.

After that the parte extant or the knotte of the Nauyll is fallen (the whiche commonlye chaunceth after the thyrde or fourth daye) then on the reste remaynyng, strew the powder or Althes of a Calles hooft burnt, or of Snayle shelles, or of the powder of lead, called red lead, tempered with wine.

Furthermore, when the Infante is swaddled and layde in Cradell, the Nurse must geue all diligence and heede that she bynde euery part ryght, and in his due place and order, and that with all tendernesse and gentle entreatyng, and not crookedly and confuselye, the whiche also

## The thyꝛde booke.

also must be done oftentimes in the day, for in this is it, as it is in young and tender ympe, plantes and twygges: the whiche, euen as ye boꝛwe them in theyꝛ youth, so wyll they euer more remayne vnto age. And euen so the Infant, yf it be bounde and swadled, the members lying ryght and strayght, then shall it growe strayght and bpryght. If it be crookedly handled, it wyll growe lykewyse. And to the yll negligence of many Nourles, may be imputed the crokednesse and deformitie of many a man and woman, whiche otherwyse myght seeme as well fauoured as any other.

By the only negligence of Nourles many childe groweth crokebacked, & wyperlegged.

Item, let the chyldes eyes be oftentimes wyper and cleansed with a fyne and cleane lynnent cloth, or with sylke. And let the armes of the Infant be verye strayght layde downe by the sydes, that they may growe ryght, and sometime strokyng the belly of the chyld before the belyche or bladder, to helpe to ease, and to prouoke the chyld to the making of water: and when ye lay it in the Cradell to sleepe, sette the Cradell in suche a place, that neither the beames of the Sunne by day, neyther the Moone by nyght come on the Infant, but rather set it in a darke and shadowy place, laying also the head euer somewhat hyer then the rest of the body.

And farther, let it be washed two or three tymes in the day, & that anone after sleepe, in the Winter with hotte water, in the Sommer with luke warme water: nether let it tary long in the water, but vnto suche tyme as the bodye begyn  
to

to waxe red for heate, but take heede that none of the water come into the infantes eares, for that should greatly hurt his hearyng another day.

Then, to be short, when it is taken out of the bath, let it be wyped and dzyed with gentle and soft linnen clothes warmed, and then to laye it on her lappe the backe bywarde, the whiche with her handes let her tenderly stroke and rub, and then to lappe it by, and to swaddell it, and when it is swadled, to put a droppe or two of water into the nozet hzyllies of it, is very good for the eye syght. And so to lay it to rest.

¶ Of the Purse and her mylke : and howe long the chyld should sucke. Cap. ii.



**A**lso concerning the bryngyng by, nourysh-  
 mente, and geuyng of sucke to the chyld, it shall be beste that the mother geue her chyld sucke her selte, for the mothers milke is more conuenient and agreeable to the Infant, then any other wo-  
 mans, and more doth it nouryshe it, for because that in the mothers belly it was wont to the same, and fed with it, and therefore also it doth more desyrouslie couet the same, as that with the which it is best acquaynted. And to be short, the mothers mylke is most hollsomme for the chyld.

The mothers mylke best & most familer to the chyld.



## The thirde booke.

chylde, as Auicenna wryteth, it shalbe sufficient to geue it sucke twyse or thryse in a daye. And alwayes beware ye geue not the chylde to muche sucke at once in this tender age of it, for cloyng of it, and least also it lothe it: but rather let it haue often of it, and lyttle at once, then fewe tymes, and ouermuche at once. For sucke as be ouer cloyed with the mothers mylke, causeth theyr body to swell and inflat, and in theyr brine shal it appeare, that it is not ouercome ne concocted or digested in the chylde: which thyng yet yf it chaunce, let the Infant be kept fastyng butyll such tyme as that which it hath receaued already be completely digested.

Item, yf the mothers mylke be somewhat sharpe or coleryke, let her neuer geue the chylde her breast fastyng. Yf it be so that the mother can not geue the Infant sucke her selfe, eyther for because of sycknesse, or that her breastes be sore, and her mylke corrupted: then let her chose a holssome Nurse, with these conditions folow-  
yng.

To chose a  
good Nurse. **F**yrste that she be of a good colour and complexion, and that her bulke and breast be of good largenesse. Secondly, that it be not to soone ne to long after her labour, so that it be two monethes after her labour at the leaste, and that (yf it may be) such one whiche had a man chylde.

**T**hyrdly, that she be of meane and measurable lyknyng, neyther to fatte ne to leane. **F**ourthlye, that she be good and honeste of conuersation, neyther ouer hastye or yrefull, ne to sadde or so-  
lome

lome, neyther to fearefull or tymorous: for these affections and qualities be pernicious and hurtfull to the mylke, corruptyng it, and passe foorth through the mylke into the childe, makyng the chylde of lyke condition and manners. Also that they be not ouerlyght and wanton of behauiour. fythly, that her breastes be full, and haue sufficient plentie of mylke, and that they be neyther to greate, softe, hangyng, and flaggynge, ne to lyttle, harde, or contracte, but of a measurable quantitie.

Also looke vpon her mylke, that it be not blackyshe, blewyshe, grey, or reddyshe, neyther sower, sharpe, saltysh, or brackyshe, neyther thynne and fluy, neyther ouer grosse and thicke, but temperately whyte, and pleasaunt in taste.

The consy-  
deration of  
the Nourses  
mylke.

And to be short, that mylke is best and mooste to be chosen, of the which a droppe beyng mylked softly vpon the nayle of the thumbe, holdyng your synger styll it rolleth not of, neyther flyteth abroade, but yf ye moue your hande a lytle it wyll flyde of by and by: but yf when it is mylked on the nayle it spreade abroade, and flyt by and by, then is it to thyn, but yf it cleaue styll when that ye moue a lytle your hande, then is it to spylle and thicke. The meane betweene both is best.

If it be so that the Nourses mylke be to hot, sharpe, or colericke: then let her neuer geue the chylde sucke, her selfe beyng fastyng.

Sometyme it charymeth that the mothers or Nourses mylke doth fayle or decrease, the  
whiche

## The chirde booke.

Diuers cau-  
ses of the de-  
fect or fay-  
ling of mylk

which thynge may come by diuers causes: as by sicknesse, by disease in the breastes, or by takyng of colde in the same, and so stoppe and cludder the mylke, or for because she lacketh suche thynges the which myght engender mylke, other by ouermuch fastyng, hunger and thyrst, the which causes muste be well consydered: and then accordyng to that, minister a remedie.

Thynge which do augment and encrease mylke be these.

Lette her vse to eate Parslypp, eyther the seede or the roote: also the seede or roote of fenyll, sodden in the broth made with Barley or Cicercula, let her eate of that with other meates that she feedeth on.

Item, to eate sheepes breastes, and the mylke of them is good.

Item, take an ounce of cowe butter, and dissolue it in warme whyte wine, the whiche let the Nurse drynke.

Item, boryng vnder the breastes doth well, without scarification.

Item, a plaster for the same of frankencense, Masticke, and Pitche, layde to the breastes, or vnder the breastes, the skynne fyrste beyng annoynted with oyle, least it shoulde cleaue ouer fast to the place.

Item, it shalbe verye good to rubbe softlye with the hande the breastes, or els in bathynge after dynner or supper, to cause some to sucke her breast.

Item, take the oyle of whyte Lyllys, or of violettes, and myngle with it Muske, Essence,  
and

The thirde booke. Fol. Cii.

and Laudanum, well tempered together, in the same dippe a peece of wooll, and clappe it to the brestes, and soke them with it.

Item washe them, and soke them often tymes with wine, in the which is decocte and sodden Mintes, Roses, Violettes, and Xiloaloes. Also to eate of the broth in the whiche is sodden a Hen, with Cinamome, Maces, Cardamomum, and also the yolke of an egge.

Item it is good for her to eate freshe Cheese and mylke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and harde workes.

Also potage made of beane meale, ryce, and bread made of fine flowre, tempered with Milke and Suger, putting to it also a quantitie of fenell seede, or of the leaues, is very good for her.

Item take of Annis seede, of Siler montanum, of eche thre drams, of Chrystall beaten to powder two drams, & as muche of Suger, geue her this to drinke about ten dayes, at morning, euening, and myd day.

Item take of fenel seede, or the leaues, and of Horehounde, of eche two handfulls, of Annis seede foure drams, of Saffron beaten one scruple, also of freshe Butter thre ounces, and see the all these in sufficient water, making hereof a plaster, the same plaster whilest it is hoate, laye it to the Nurfes brest.

Item take of Cummin seede an ounce and an halfe, & of clarified Hony thre ounces, see the it in fiue pyntes of water altogether put into a newe pot, and let it see the to the third parte, and

## The thirde booke.

of this decoction geue the Nurse oftentimes to drynke.

Item take of Beetes well washed one ounce, of Cummin halfe an ounce, of Honye sixe ounces, of these myngled and tempered together, make an electuarie, of the whiche let her take both in the mornynge and euenynge, at eche time a sponesfull.

Item take two drams of Crystall beaten into fyne powder, and diuide that in foure equall partes: one of these partes geue vnto the Nurse, the space of foure dayes to drynke, with broth made eyther of Cicer, or elles of peason.

Also all these thinges folowynge, encrease and augment Mylke in the brestes: Annise, and Annis seede, Dyll and the seede, Horehounde, Cardamomum, freshe Cheese, Wortes made of olde Cheese, Cicer, Cristal beaten to powder & taken with Hony, Lettuse, Fenel, wine in whiche Rosemarye or Sauery be sodden.

Company  
ing with  
men corrup  
teth the nur  
ses mylke.

Item to abstayne from venery or mans company: for yf she vse that, it shall spende and consume the Mylke, and make it vnswaery and vnholosome, neyther can the chyld well brooke it, but mooste commonly shall cast it by agayne, because it can not digest it.

Also it shalbe beste that the chyld sucke not of the Mothers breste by and by, as soone as it is borne, but rather of some other womannes, for a day or two, for because that the cream (as they call it) straight after the byrth, the fyrst day  
in

in all women doth thicken and congele.

Item, yf it chaunce that the Nurse be ouer sore laxed, or that she be ouer bounde, so that she take anye medicines to remedie it: then let another geue the chylde sucke whylest she be recouered agayne. And when the chylde is layde in cradell to be rocked, rocke not to faste, leaste through ouer much rockyng and styrringe, the chyldes stomacke turne, and the Mylke there corrupt for lacke of rest.

Auisen aduiseeth to geue the chylde sucke two yeares: howe be it amonge vs mooste commonly, they sucke but one yere. And when ye wyll weane them, then do it not sodenly, but a litle and litle, and to make for it litle pylles of bread and Suger to eat, and accustome it so, tyll it be able to eat all maner of meate: and this shall suffice for the education and bringing by of infantes at this tyme. Notwithstandyng dyuers other thynges here are left bnsproken of, another tyme God wylling we shal declare them at large.

Howe long  
the chylde  
should sucke

**O**f diuers diseases and infirmities whiche chaunce to chyldren lately borne, and the remedies therfore. Cap. iiii.



Although there be in maner infinite diseases which happen the Infantes, as writeth Hipocrates, Galenus, Rasis,

Many disea  
ses of In  
fantes.

### The thirde booke.

Racis, Auicenna, and diuers other: yet for breuitie and shortnesse we wyl rehearse here onely suche of them whiche moſte commonly happen to the ſame, & that be theſe: exulceration of the gummes, ſtixe of the belly, or ouermuch looſenes of the ſame, the belly harde bounde, the crampe, the coughe and diſtillation of the head, ſhorſte wyndnes, bladders on the tongue, exulceration or clypping of the mouth, apoſtume in the eares, apoſtume in the brayne, ſwelling and bolnyng of the eyes, ſkumme or creame of the eyes, the feuer, knawbyng in the bellye, the body ſwelling and puffed vp, often ſneeling, wheales or bladders of the body, ſwelling of the coddies, ſwelling of the nauyl, vnſleepineſſe, yering, appetite to parbreake, fearefulneſſe in the dreames, the mother iſſuyng out of the fundement gutte, wormes in the bellye, chaufyng, the falling ſickneſſe, the conſumption, the pallye, trembling of the partes of the body, the ſtone, goggle eyes.

How

Howe to cure and to remedie all these, now  
wyl I shewe in order.

First in exulceration of the gummes, are Of exulce-  
ration of  
the gums.  
wont certayne pushes, and as it were whea-  
les to growe on the gummes, or in the cor-  
ners of the iawes, the whiche put the place to  
muche greivance: and to remedie this, it shalbe  
good that ye with your synger rubbe the infan-  
tes gummes, and the pushes or whelkes withal,  
and then to annoynt the same gummes with  
oyntment made of Venes grece, Hares or Co-  
nyes brayne, oyle of Camomell mixt with hony:  
then take water, and in it seethe Camomell and  
Dyll, the whiche water beyng hoate, powre it  
on the chyldes head, holdyng it a foote above the  
head.

Of the fire and ouermuch loosenes  
of the belly.

For this take the seede of Roses, Cumin, For the fire  
in chyldren.  
Annise, and the seede of Smalage, beate  
all these together, and make them plaster:  
wyl, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

And farther, yf that it whiche the infante boy  
deth be of redde or yelow colour, then geue it  
to drynke of the syrope of Roses, or of Crabbes,  
other els of Pomegranates, tempered with a li-  
tle Mynte water.

Item, take the seede of Sorrell, and beate it,  
then temper it together with the yolke of a  
rosted



### The thirde booke.

rosted egge, and geue that to the chylde to eate, or els take of the same seede bruised fyrst, and then seethe it in fayre runnyng water, thereof let the chylde drynke two or thre tymes the day.

Item take a gall, and beate it to pouder, then seethe it in water, with this water temper Barlye meale, or the meale of Mellium, and make a plaster of it, the whiche laye vnto the chyldes belly.

Item, yf that that commeth from the chylde be whytyshe, then take of Nutmegs the weight of a peny, and of whyte Frankencense a scruple, or the weyght of two pence, the which temper with the iuyce of a Quince, and geue it to the chylde to drynke.

Item, take the meale of Barley, temper it with the iuyce of Plantane, and a litle wineger, and make it plasterwysse, and laye it to the chyldes belly, but beyng fyrst a litle boyled together ouer the fyre.

Item, take the iuyce of Centinodium, and the whyte of an egge, and temper them together, to the whiche adde the powder of dried red Roses, the powder of Hematites, Masticke, Frankencense, Bole armeniacke, Sanguis Draconis, & the rindes of Pomegranate, of all these mixed together make a plaster, and lay it (fyrst warmed ouer the fyre) to the Infantes belly.

Item, to washe the chylde with the water in the whiche be sodden leaues of redde Roses, is very good.

Item, take the iuyce of Camfely, and the iuyce  
of

of Plantane the more and the lesse, and in this put claye of an olde furnesse or Duen, and make of it a plaster, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

¶ To vnloose the chyldes beyng bounde.

If the chyld be so bounde, that it can not long tyme haue any stoole, then make a suppositarie of Hony, sodden till it be harde and massye, and let the suppositary be of the length of your litle finger, and the bignesse of two wheate strawes bounde together, then dippe it into oyle, and conuey it into the chyldes fundament.

Item, lyke wyse ye may make a suppositar of the stalke and the roote of Beates, or els of the roote called Dresse or flouredeluce roote, made of the quantitie before spoken, and conuayed into the sitting place of the childe.

Item, to geue to the Infant as much Hony as a pease to drynke, and to rubbe the belly a litle, and to souple it with a peece of wooll dipped in oyle, or dipped in Bulles gail, and layde to the Nauell.

Item, ye may geue vnto the Nurse a medicine whiche hath vertue to vnbynde and loose, and the next day after let the chyld sucke her, and it wyll loose also the chyld.

Item, take of small Malloves, of great Malloves, of eche an handfull, of fenegreke & Lineseede of eche an ounce, of Holyoke two ounces, of figges the number of .x. seethe all these together in water, and then stampe them in a mortar, and

### The thirde booke.

put vnto it of Butter and of Hennes grece of eche two ounces, and of Saffron one scruple, and make a plaster of it vpon a linnen cloth, of the thickenesse of a straw, and lay it to the chyldes belly, a day and a nyght.

¶ If this moue not the belly, then take of Aloes, Cicotrine one dram, of Heleborus both niger and albus, of eche .xv. graynes, beate these to powder, then temper them with thre sponesfuls of the iuyce of Malwurt, or of Dre gall, in this licour dippe woll, and lay it to the Nauell the breadth of a hande, and bynde it to the place.

Item, take the iuyce of Malwurt and of Mill meale, & seethe those together, till they be thicke, then make a plaster thereof, and lay it to the belly beneath the Nauell.

#### ¶ Remedie for the crampe or distention of the members.

If it chaunce that the infante be taken with the disease called the crampe, the whiche for the moste part commeth of indigestion, and of the weakenesse of the power attractiue, and specially in suche chyldren the whiche be verye fat and moyste, then shall ye annoynt all along the backe of the infante with the oyle of blewe flowredeluce, or els white Lillies, either the oile of Rue.

¶ Of the crampe take the chylde whylest it stretcheth forth the armes, legges, and other members (as we be wont in gaping or ianyng) then  
let

let it be bathed and washed in water, in the whiche prime Roses, Couclappes, or the flowres of Camomell be sodden, or els annoynt it with the oyle of Violettes, and the oyle of sweete Almons tempered together: and yf the chylde be in greate heate, annoynt him with the oyle of Violettes, or with oyle Olive, tempered with a litle whyte ware, and also powre on the childes head the oyle of violetttes.

Remedie for the cough and distillation, or  
Catarrhes of the head.

Sometymes the chylde is sore enscambred with the cough, and with distillation or running of humours out of the head, to the nose, the mouth, & the brest, y<sup>e</sup> which ye shal remedy thus.

fyrst powre warme water on the chylde's head, holdyng it a foote and a halfe from the chylde's head, and so do continually the space of halfe an houre, and in the meane whyle put a litle Honye on the chylde's tongue to chaue vpon: then put your synger into the chylde's mouth, and depresse or holde downe the innermoste part, or the roote of the tongue nexte to the throte, to prouoke the chylde to vomite, and to boyde the grosse and viscouse humours whiche be cause of this yll.

Item take Gumme Arabicke, Gumme Dragagant, the seede of Quinces, the iuyce of Lycorise, and Sugar penedium, all this beaten together

## The thirde booke.

gether, geue euery day to the chylde a quantitie with Mylke newe mylked.

Item, make Almonde mylke, with Almondes blanchèd, and only the iuyce or water of Fenell, wherof when it is well sodden, let the chylde eate or drynke mornynge and eueryng, or anye other tyme of the day.

And yf it be so that the cough haue exasperat and made rough the tongue and the roose of the mouth, then take of the seedes of Quinces two sponefulles, bruisse them a litle, and stype them in warme water the space of two or thre houres, then strayne the viscouse & grosse water from them through a strayner, and that remayneth, frye it together in a frying panne with Suger Penidium, and the oile of sweete almondes, thereof making an electuarium, the whiche geue vnto the chylde to receaue: yf the chylde haue great heate with the cough, then ad vnto the same electuarie, the iuyce of a sweete Pomegranate.

Item agaynst the cough and ouer muche heate, take the seede of white Popie and Dragagant, of eche two drams, of the seedes of Cowardes foure drams, and beate all these together, and geue at once the weight of foure pence to the chylde, with the water in whiche reasons haue ben sodden.

Item, take Reasons, and doynge away the graynes of it, seeth them together with water in a frying panne, so that they burne not to the bottome of the panne: then take it from the fyre  
and

and beate it well in a mortar, temperyng therewithall Suger Penidium, and geue of this in the mornyng and euenyng to the chylde.

Agayne, yf the cough come of a colde cause, then take a litle Myrre beaten to powder, and temper it with a quantitie of warmed Hony, and the oyle of Sweete Almondes, and of this geue vnto the chylde.

Furthermore the Nurse must auoyde all such thinges, the which may engender cough, as Vineger, ouer muche salted meates, Cheese, Nuts, & all sharpe thinges. Also she must annoynt the chyldes brest with butter, and with Dialthea.

Item, for the cough, take Reasons and frye them in a frying panne, then stampe them in a mortar, and to that adde as muche of Suger Penidium, with a litle oyle of Violettes, & make an electuarie of these, and geue to the chylde the mountenaunce of a hassell Nut.

Remedy for short wynde.

**M**Any tymes chaunceth also to Infantes difficultie of brething or short windnesse: the which to remedie, take Lineseede, and beate it, & geue of it vnto the chylde with Hony: but yf the disease encrease on the chylde, and that the wynde pipes in maner seeme stopped, then annoynt well the eares, and all the places about the eares with oyle Olyue, and also the tongue, for to prouoke vomite, and then powre a litle warme water into the chyldes mouth to washe it withall, and geue to it a litle Lineseede, tempered with Honye and beaten, made after the

## The thirde booke.

the fashion of an electuarie.

Item, yf the chylde haue besydes this also the  
flir: then geue vnto it the Syrope of Myrtys,  
other els Dates sodden with Milke and flowre.

Against wheales oz bladders on the tongue.

Item, sometymes happeneth to the  
chyldezen Wheales and blisters on theyz  
tongues and mouth, Whiche thinges  
commeth of the sharpenesse and eager-  
nesse of the Nurles mylke, the mouth  
and tongue of the Infant beyng so ten-  
der, that the least thing that toucheth  
it, shal offende it: Wherfore, besides that  
it is great payne to the chylde thus to be  
blistered by the eagernes of the milke, it  
is also very perillous and dangerous.  
For suche Wheales which be not ripe &  
seeme blacke, betoken death: Whiche yf  
they be Whyte oz yelowyshe, then they  
be of lesse peryll.

Agaynst this yll, take violettes and Roses,  
and seethe them in a litle Rose water, and ther-  
with washe the blysters.

Item, take the iuyce of Letuse, the iuyce of  
Petie

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxlii.

Petrie morell, and the iuyce of Purselayne, which when they be well commixt and tempered together, annoynt therewith the whelkes. And yf the foresayde blysters or whelkes be blackishe: then adde to the foresayde iuyces, Licorise beaten to powder.

Item yf the same be very moyste, then take Myrre, Galles, the rine of Frankencense, beate them wel together, and temper them with Hony, and annoynt the chyldes tongue therewith.

Item take the iuyce of Mulberies before they be fully ripe, other els of bnyppye grapes, which is called Uergeus, and with that annoynt the tongue.

Item, it is verye good to washe the tongue with redde wine, and then to strewe vpon it the powder of Galles, or els of the barke or rine of Frankencense.

Yf ye wyll haue a quicker medicine in operation and sharper: then take Bole armeniake, Psidium, and Sumach, of eche thre drams: also of Galles two drams, of Alome one dram, all these beate together, and searse them through a searser, and strewe that powder on the blysters.

Item yf these wheales be reddishe and cause muche spittle to gather together in that place, then let the Nurse vse suche thinges whiche are moyste and colde, and let her cha'we in her mouth very small a fewe fatches, of the which lay on the Infantes mouth and tongue.

Item Amilum or starch tempered together with  
Rose



## The thirde booke.

Rose water, & put on the chylde's tongue, is good.

Item, take the iuyce of Pomegranates, the iuyce of Quinces, or the iuyce of Oranges, and do of this on the chylde's tongue in lyke maner: but yf the wheales or blysters be some what yellowyshe, then to these iuyces spoken of before, adde the iuyce of Lettuse and of Purlelayne. But yf the wheales seme whytyshe, then take of Myrre and of Saffron, of eche one dramme, of Sugar candye two drams, and beate these to powder, and lay of it on the wheales and tongue.

**C** Of exulceration or clefture, chappynge or chynynge of the mouth.

**S**ometymes by reason of the hardnes of the Nurses pappes, the chylde's lippes and mouth be exulcerate, hauing in maner of cleftes & chinnes in them: and in this case take tozed woll, and dyp it in the iuyce of Plantaine, or els in Butter molten, or in fresh Hens greace, euery of them beyng warme, and with this annoynt the mouth and lippes of the chylde.

Of appostumatation and runnyng of the eares.



**V**hen that humours and matter yssueth out of the eares, which properly commeth of aboundant humours in all the bodye, and most specially in the heade: then take a peece of wooll, and dyppe it in Hony mixt with redde wine, to the whiche is put also a litle quantitie

quantitie of Aloome beaten to powder, or of Saffron, then make of the same as it were a tente, and put it in the chyldes eare, and when the tent hath sucked and drawen to it the humours and fylthynesse of the eare, then take it out, and put in newe: and yf that which commeth out of the eare be as matter, then take of sodden Hony, & temper it with water, put of it into the eares: or els take the powder of Galles, temperyng it with vineger, and do lyke wyse.

But yf the chyld haue great payne and dolour by wyndnesse, ventositie, and the humours in this place: then seethe Organy and Myrre with oyle Olyue, and so beyng warme, put of it into the eares.

#### Of apostumation in the head.

**I**f there be any apostume engendered in the head, (whiche many times chaunceth) the which causeth the chekes & eies to be greatly payned, & the eye sight to waxe wannyshe or tawnye: then must be applied such thinges whiche may refrigerate and coole the braynes: as, take of the iuyce of Cowardes, and the iuyce of Nyghtshade, iuyce of Purselayne, and temper them with the oyle of Roses, in this dyppe a peece of wooll, and laye it to the head, and as often as it waxeth drye, dyp it agayne.

Of

## The thirde booke.

¶ Of the swelling or bolnyng of the eyes.

**A**gainst swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, take Licium, and temper it with womans Mylke, & put of it into the chyldes eyes, and bynde it to the place with a fine and soft linnen cloth: then afterwarde washe the eyes with water in which Camomel and Basil haue ben sodden. Yf that in this swelling the eyes be not red, neither the browes swollen: then take Myrre, Aloes, Saffron, and the leaues of Roles, and temper all these, and steepe them in old wine, and binde it to the chyldes eyes with some linnen cloth, and into the chyldes nose put a quantitie of Ambze dissolved in womans Mylke.

¶ Of the scum or whyte of the eye.

**A**gainst the scum or whyte of the eye, whiche for the moste parte happeneth to chyldren through ouer muche crying and weepying, take the iuyce of Solatrum, and drop of the same into the chyldes eye, and yf by the same chaunce the bayne of the eyes ware reddishe, or be swollen, then annoynt them with the same iuyce.

¶ Against immoderate heate, or the feuer.

**I**f the Infante be in greate and behemente heate contrary to nature, the whiche is called a feuer: fyrste it shalbe the Nurses parte, to eate and vse suche thynges the whiche coole and moylen.

Also

The thirde booke. Fol. Cr.

Also to geue vnto the Infant of these thynges folowynge. The iuyce of Pomegranate, the water of Bourdes, Suger, with a little Camphere mixed herewithall, tempered well together. Item it is very good to prouoke it to sweatyng.

Item, take of the iuyce of Moorme wood, of Plantane, Malowes, and Singrene, and temper them altogether, and seethe them a lyttle on the fyre, in the whiche also mixe Barlye meale, and make a plaster of all these, and lay it to the chyldes breste. Also take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Poplar, and myxe them together, with this oymntment beyng colde annoynt the chyldes forehead, the temples, the armes, the handes about the wystes, and the pulles, and the feete about the ancles.

Item, take of Barly meale, and of dryed Roses, and powdred, and temper these with the water of Roses, and the water of Endiue, and make thereof on the fyre a plaster, the whiche laye to the chyldes brestes somewhat warme.

Also as often as the chyld is washed, let it be done with water in whiche is sodden suche thynges whiche coole: as Letuce, Purslane, Endiue, Plantane, and suche other.

Agaynst frettyng or gnawynge in the belly.

**I**f the chyld be vexed with frettyng and gnawynge in the bellye, the whiche thyng ye shall knowe by the immoderate cryng of the chyld, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great cryng: then shall you take

Ri

warme

## The thyꝛde booke.

warne water, wherein hath ben sodden Lauender, Cummin, Fenell seede, or the seede of Dyll, and oyle Oliue, temperyng them together, and herein dip a peece of wooll, and therewith looke the chyldes belly oftentymes.

Agaynst swelling of the body.



When the chyldes bodye or any parte thereof is swollen & puffed vp, then take the toppes of Elder tree, and of Malwurt, and seethe them in whyte wyne, and therein lay the Infant, speciall ye yf it be not taken with ouer greate heate: but yf so be that with swelling in the head the bellye be swollen also, the take Myrre, Aloes epatike, and Saffron, and beate them altogether, and temper them with the iuyce of Beanes, and lay it to the chyldes head.

Agaynst often sneesyng.

Sometymes the Infantes be sore troubled and vexed with often sternutation and sneesyng: whiche thyng yf it come of the apostume in the head, then shal ye minister such thynges to the head, whiche refrigerate and coole, whether it be oyles, oyntmentes, iuyces of the hearbes, or other thynges. If this come of any other cause then of apostume: then take Balsyll be it greene or drye, and put of the iuyce or powder of it into the chyldes nose. But yf this sneesyng come and begyn with heate, and that the chyldes eyes seeme as they grewe inward for payne thereof: then lay to the chyldes head

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxi.

head the leaues of Purslane, or Bowarde cutte in thynne slyces and tempered with the oyle of Roses, and Barley meale, and also the yolke of an egge.

Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.

**T**Hese whelkes yf they appeare blacke vpon the body, they signifie peryll of lyfe, and so muche the more, the greater quantitie that there is of them: but yf they seeme whytyshe or reddishe, it is no peryll, and may easly be cured. Wherefore take the leaues of the redde Rose, the leaues of Mirtils, and of Tamariscus, and seeth these in water, and in that water wet a linnen cloth, and soke therewith the whelkes.

Item, lyke wyse it is good to annoynte the same with the oyle of Roses, of Mirtilles, and Tamariscus. If the whelkes be whyte or reddishe, then let them be rype before ye minister anye thing to them: and when they be open and begun to matery, then to cleanse, purifie, and to drye them, beyng rype and broken, it is verye good to washe the same whelkes with Mulsun or Hydromell, in whiche Saltpeter is dissolued. Mulsun and Hydromell is, water and Honye sodden together.

Agaynst swellng of the coddess.

**M**Any tymes chaunceth to chylidren (thorowe ouermuche crying) swellng about the coddess, and sometymes buritenesse,

R ii

and

## The thyꝛde booke.

and swelling in the inner part of the thyghes, the whiche swelling sometymes commeth by inflammation or great heate, and sometyme with onlye wyndynesse. If it come of wyndynesse, then the coddess wyll sometymes appeare so styffe as a tabour, and shyne as it were an horne. The remedye for this is to take a quart of double Beere woort, and therein seethe of the leaues of Bay halfe a handfull, of Rue a quarter of an handfull, of fenell, Dyll, and Camomell, of eche a meane handfull: cutte and broose all these hearbes together, and seethe them from the quarte to the pinte, then strayne them strongly from the liquer, in the whiche liquer seethe so muche beane flowze as may serue to make a plaster, therto addyng at the latter ende two or thre spoonefulles of oyle of Camomell, and lay this plaster hotte to the coddess. If the swelling come of heate, then alay the same with some colde hearbes, suche as I haue often tymes spoken of before.

### ¶ Agaynst swelling of the Nauyll.

**A**lso sometymes the chyldes Nauyll swelleth, and specially strayght after the byrth when it is cutte. For this, take Spyke Celtyke, and seethe it in the oyle of Almondess, myxed with a lytle Turpentine: then in this dyppe wooll, and lay it on the place.

But yf so be that this swelling come of ouermuche crying, cough, or of a stroke or fall: Then take bytter Lupines, and the powder of  
fayze

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxii.

faire olde linnen cloth burnt to powder, and temper these with red wine, and then in this dyp a peece of towe, and lay it to the Nauyll.

¶ Agaynst vnleppynesse.

**A**gainst vnleppynesse, that is, when the child is destitute and wanteth his due and naturall rest, all the whyle crying and weepynge. For this take two heades (with the seedes therein contayned) of whyte Popie, and with one spones full of Rose water, and thre or foure droppes of Vineger, stampe them in a mortar reasonably, then adde thereto two sponesfulles of womans milke, and the waight of an halfpenny of Saffron, with halfe a sponesfull of Barlie flowre, the whiche yet stampe a little together agayne, and then laye it in a fine thinne double linnen cloth, and applie it to the forehead from one temple to the other.

Item, geue the chylde to drynke a little of the syrope of Popie. Also to annoynt the temples with the oyle of Popie is very good.

But yf this vnleppynesse come of the impuritie of the Nurses mylke (as manye tymes it doth) then take of the oyle of Violettes, and put vnto it a little quantitie of Vineger, and of this licour droppe oftentimes into the chyldes noses thylles. Or els take the oyle of Roses, and temper it with the iuyce of Letuse, and therewith annoynt the head and the stomacke of the chylde, and farther, see that the Nurses mylke may be amended.



## The thirde booke.

¶ Agaynst peryng oz the hreckate.

**H**is peryng commeth eyther of coldnesse of the stomacke, other els of ouermuche fulnesse, oz for lacke of meate and emptines of the stomacke, oz els by some hotte and colerike qualitie bytyng vppon the mouth of the stomacke.

As often as it commeth by the aboundaunce of meate and fulnesse, the remedie is to prouoke it to vomite. If by coldenes of the stomacke, then annoynt the stomacke with the oyle of Bayes warmed, other els lay to the stomacke a plaster made of the seede of Dyll, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Hyntes.

But yf it chaunce by any heate oz coleryke qualitie, then take the oyle of Violettes, oz of Roses, the iuyce of Endiue, oz of any other suche hearbes the whiche haue power to infrigidate and coole, and temper the same with womans mylke, and annoynt therewith the chyldes stomacke.

And when it proceedeth by defecte and lacke of meate oz emptinesse of the stomacke, then geue to the chyld to feede vppon mylke, and other good hollome thynges to suppe, neyther passe not greatly though the chyld reiecte and vomite by agayne that the whiche it receaueth, for so muche euer wyll remayne in the stomacke that shalbe sufficient to sustayne it, and meanely to nouryshe it.

¶ Agaynst

Agaynst often parbreaking by weakenesse and  
weeblenesse of the stomacke.



Gainst ouermuch parbreaking, beat  
foure graynes of Cloues, and geue it  
to the chylde to drynke with foure or  
fyue spoonefulles of red wine.

Item, take of Masticke, whyte  
frankencense, and the leaues of the red Rose  
so muche as shalbe sufficient, and all these beaten  
together, temper them with the iuyce of Myn-  
tes, and make a plaster of it, laying it to the  
chylde's stomacke. But yf the chylde's vomityng  
be very behement, then put vnto these foresayde  
thynges a quantitie of Rose vineger.

Item, take fine meale, and bake it so hot in  
an ouen, or els in a frying panne ouer the fyre  
tyll it ware broune, then beate it to powder a-  
gayne, puttyng it into vineger, and to these ad  
the yolke of an egge hard rosted, Masticke, fran-  
kencense, and Gumme Arabicke, and temper all  
these with the iuyce of Myntes, makynge of it a  
plaster, the whiche laye to the chylde's stomacke,  
and to the chylde's mouth and nose hold a warme  
toste of breade.

Causes of this yll be thre. The fyrst, yf the  
chylde haue taken more mylke then it is able to  
concocte and digest. The seconde, yf the Nur-  
ses mylke be ouerthinne, wateryshe, and fluishe.  
The thyrde, yf the same mylke be impure, fe-  
culent, and corrupte. These causes prouoke vo-  
mite, and speciall ye yf the chylde also haue a

## The chyldre booke.

weake and waterishe stomacke: wherfore ye must helpe the Infant after this maner.

First let the childe sucke lesse then it did before, and then also marke that which the childe doeth perbrake, whether it sauer sharpely lyke Wineger, or that it be whytyshe. For yf it be so: then take of whyte frankensence. viii. graynes, of dryed Rue. xx. graynes: beate these to powder, and geue it to the childe to drinke, with the syrope of red Roses.

Or els let the Nurse chaue Cummin, and so put it into the chyldes mouth: Geue also of the syrope of Pomegranates, with the powder of dry Myntes to the chylde.

Take Masticke, Accatia, Xiloaloes, Galles, whyte frankensence, tosted bread, of eche lyke much, beate them together, puttyng to of red Roses, and temperyng it with the conserue of Roses, and lay it to the chyldes stomacke.

But if it so be that the perbrakyng of the childe sauer not after the fashion of Wineger, but after some other sowre sauour, and that it be not whytyshe, but pale or yelowyshe: then geue it the iuyce of Quinces, and lay this plaster vnto the chyldes stomacke. Take Barlye meale, wyld Mulberies, and Psidium, beate all these together, and temper it with Rose water, and lay it to the chyldes stomacke.

And furthermore, yf the chyldes stomacke be somewhat waterishe, and slowe in digestion, then annoynt it with the water of Roses, in the which Muske hath ben dissolved, or els the water

The thirde booke. Fol. cxliii.

water of Mirtylles, and geue it to drynke the  
iuyce of Quinces, with a little Cloues and Su-  
ger, or with a scruple of Nutmegges therewith  
tempered and mixed.

¶ Agaynst fearfull and terrible dreames.

**A**lso sometyme the chyldren be vexed and  
vniquieted with fearefull and terrible drea-  
mes in their sleepe, which thyng for the  
most part commeth of the aboundaunce of foode,  
and ouermuch meate or drynkes, which for the  
copie and superfluitie therof, can not be conuict  
ne overcome of nature, wherfore necessarily it  
putrifieth and corrupteth: the noysome & hidyous  
vapours wherof, stying by to the head in tyme of  
sleepe, causeth these terrible fantasies in the  
sleepe. And thus may it be remedyed. First take  
heede that ye lay not the chylde to sleepe strayght  
after it hath fed, and also let it licke a litle hony,  
swallowyng it downe, so that by it, such thinges  
the which be somewhat harde to digest and con-  
coct, may the sooner be digested, and the refuse  
the moze easily to descende into the guttes.

Item, euery day geue to the Infant halfe a dram  
of the electuarie called Diamuscum, or Diaplicis.  
Also Triacle in this case is very good, taken with  
mylke, as saith Rasis.

¶ Agaynst issuyng soozth of the fundament gut.

**F**OR the issuyng soozth of this gut, when  
the chylde laboureth to ease it selfe: Take  
Mirtylles, Acorne cuppes, red Roses dried,  
burnt

## The thyꝛde booke.

burnt Hartes hornes, burnt Alome, Goates  
hoofe, Balauſtium, and Galles, of eche lyke much,  
and ſeethe all theſe together with water, ſo long  
till the water haue receaued the ſtrength of the  
ingredience, and with this water beyng warme,  
waſhe the gut, and ſo conuey it into the bodye a-  
gayne, as I taught you in the ſeconde booke.

### ¶ Agaynſt Tenasmus.



Enasmus is a diſeaſe when the  
child enforceth it ſelf to the ſtoole,  
and yet can do nothyng, the whi-  
che thyrng oftentymes chaunceth  
to children, moſte commonly pro-  
ceedyng of colde. Agaynſte the  
which, ye ſhall ble theſe remedies. Take Garden  
Crefles and Cummin ſeede, of eche lyke muche,  
beate them together and temper them with olde  
butter, and geue it to dꝛynke to the chylde with  
colde water.

Item, take Turpentine, and laye it bypon  
coales, whoſe ſume let the chylde receaue be-  
neathe in the fundement, the ſume beyng inclo-  
ſed rounde about with clothes.

Item, take Tarre, and lyke wyſe make ſume  
of it, receauyng the ſume as before.

### Agaynſt wooꝛmes in the belly.

**S**ometymes there breede wooꝛmes in the  
guttis, of the bygneſſe and quantitie of  
ſuche as are wonte to be in olde Cheeſe,  
called Mytes, and ſome lyke lyce. And ſometyme  
in the belly be engendꝛed wooꝛmes of the byg-  
neſſe

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxb.

nesse of earth woormes, called Cases. Agaynst these vse this remedy, Take the water of Centumnodia, and geue it to the chylde to drynke with mylke.

Item, take of whyte Corall, the scrapynge of Iuery, of Hartes horne burnt, and of Treos, of eche a scruple, of Suger candie one ounce and an halfe, of the water of Centumnodia, so muche as shalbe sufficient to temper all these thynges before, and of this make suppositaries, ministryng to the chylde euery day the wayght of two drammes.

Otherwylse accordyng to Rasis mynde: Take of Cummin seede as muche as shalbe sufficient, and temper it with Dre gall, makyng thereof a plaster, the whiche ye shall lay to the Infantes Nauyll.

Item, oyle Oliue taken and drunken a small quantitie thereof, is very good to kyl all maner of woormes whiche breede in the gutte, neere to the fundement: Take the fynest cotten, & thereof make suppositaries, the which ye shall annoynt with the oyle of Wormewood, or of Rue, or of the kynelles of Peaches, or the oyle of bytter Almondz, and so to conuey it into the chyldes syttyng place.

Item, it shall greatly profite the chylde, yf it be washed in the water in whiche is sodden Wormewood, and the leaues of Peaches.

Item, an oyntmente for the same. Take of Wormewood & of Lupines, of eche two dramis, of Siler

## The thirde booke.

Siler montanum, Cummin, Cockle, Centorie, and Centonicum, and of Hartes horne burnt, of eche foure drammes, all these thynges beaten together, temper them in the oyle of Wormewood, or of bytter Almons the wayght of two ounces, puttyng to it foure drammes wayght of ware, and make hereof an oyntment, and annoynt the chyldes belly therewith by the fire, or in some warme place.

Item, take of Cockle two drammes, of Wormewood and Masticke of eche one dram, of Aloes, red Corall, of eche two drammes, of Coriander preparat, sixe drammes, beate all these well together. Adde also to these, of Rye meale three ounces, of Lupines beaten to powder, sixe drammes, of Saffron two drammes, temper al these in two ounces of the iuyce of Rue, and foure ounces of the iuyce of Wormewood, or of the oyle of the same, and make hereof a plaster, and lay it vnto the chyldes Nauyll the breadth of a hande.

Item, geue the chyld the wayght of foure pence of the powder of Aloes cicotrine, with fayre water fyfte sodden and sweeted with Suger, or els with single beare, and this no doubt is soueraigne.

Item, agaynst the great and long wormes. Take of the iuyce of Wormewood, and of Ore gal, of both two ounces, of Colocinthis, viii. drammes, temper all these well together, addyng to it a lyttle wheaten meale, and make hereof a plaster, the whiche laye to the Nauyll of the chyld.

Item,

The thyrde booke. Fol. Cxvi.

Item a bathe for the same.

Take Wormewood, and Gauls, and seethe them in water, and let the chylde be bathed in it by to the Nauyll.

Of chaufyng or gallyng in any place of the body.

**A**gainst gallyng or chaufyng of the chyldes skynne, by reason of the acrimonie & sharpnes of brine or sweate: Take Mirtils and beate them to powder, and strewe thereof on the place. Item, take of Irios, of the red Rose, of Cyprus, of Tragacantum, so much as shalbe thought sufficient, and beate them all, or part of them, and strewe of the powder on the chaufed places.

Item, take of the oyle of Roses one ounce, of whyte Frankencense one dramme, and melt these together, and then take eyght graynes of Camphire dissolued in Rose water, and myxt therewithall, and of all this make an oyntment, and annoynt the chaufed place therewithall.

Also Vnguentum album, and Vnguentum rubrum be good for this purpose.

Item, the decoction and fomentation with the water wherein Plantane, knot grasse, docke rootes, or Bursa pastoris is sodden, is very good for the same.

Of the fallyng sicknesse.

**S**ometymes these Infantes be vexed and encumbred with the fallyng sicknesse, and that two maner of wayes. One is, that  
it



## The thyrde booke.

It hath this disease strayght forth with the byrth: Cause of the whiche, is colde and yll humours in the head and braynes. Another is, that it taketh this infirmitie after the byrth by some accidentall causes, in whiche case, yf it leaue not the childe, being a manchylde, before he be .xxv. yeres of age, and the woman chylde about the tyme of hauyng her fyrste flowres: yf it forsake them not in this space, neyther by the myght of nature, neyther of medicines, then is it lyke neuer to depart from them.

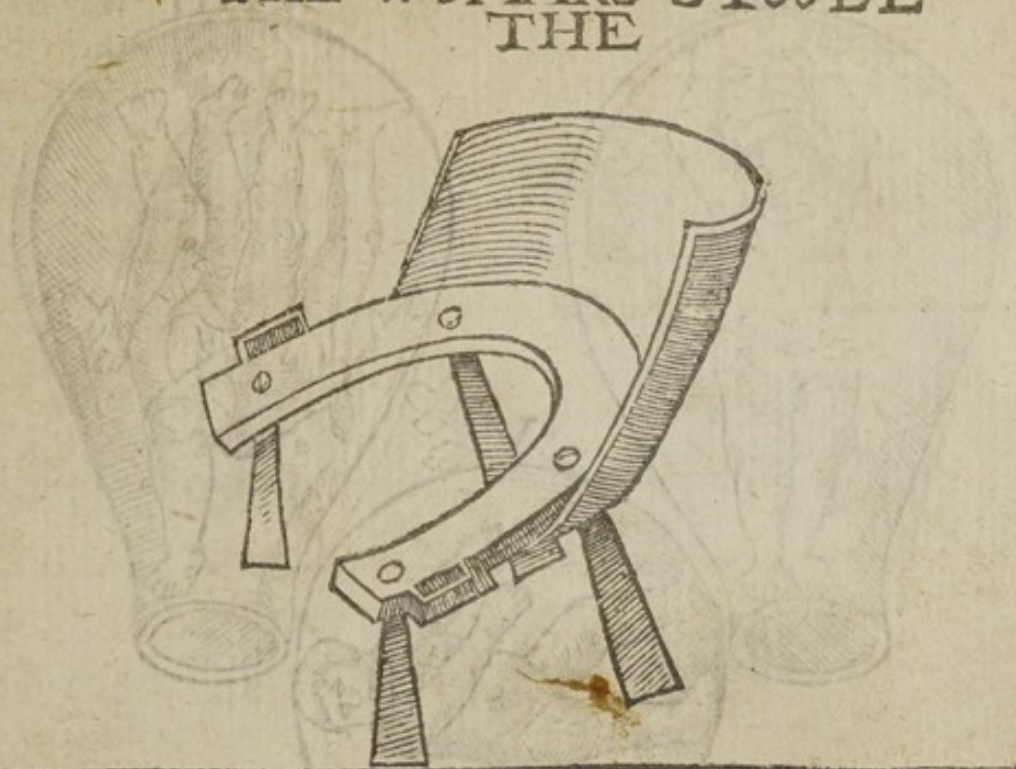
Agayne, yf this disease come not by nature, but by some accidentall cause afterwarde, then geue diligent heede that the Nurses mylke be very good, and conuenient to the chyldes nature. And for the same purpose yf necessitie require, it shalbe verpe good to purge and cleanse the Nurses bodye with due and meete medicines, and she must auoyde all suche thynges the which do coole and moysten, and to suffer the chylde to receaue no more mylke at once, then it may be able well to digest.

Agaynst this cruell disease, auchours muche commende the roote of a Dionie, only hanged about the chyldes necke.

Item, the same roote dzyed and beaten to powder, and so oftentimes geuen to the chylde to take, sometymes with dzyne, sometymes with potage, pap, or mylke, or any other wayes. Lyke wyse the seede of Dionie is very good.

Farthermore, powre nowe and then into the chyldes nosethrils of oyle of Castorium, or the oyle  
of

THE BIRTH FYGVRES  
THE WOMANS STOOLE  
THE



II



I



THE BYRTHE

III

III



V



VI



VII



• FIGVRES •

IX



VIII



X



XI



XII



THE BYRTHE FYGVRES  
XIII



XV



XVI



XVII




The chyldre booke. Fol. Cxvii.

of Costus, or of Euforbium: Also let the chyldre smell to Rue and to Afa fetida.

Item, to hang Viscum quersimum, which is gathered in Marche the moone decreasyng, about the chyldes necke, is verye good. Byuers other thynges there be whiche myght be here rehearsed, but this shalbe sufficient at this tyme.

¶ Consumption or pynnyng away of the body.

 When the Infant falleth away, and the fleshe rebateth, remaynyng nothing but as it were skyn and bone, and thereby the chyldre waxeth sycklye: Then let the Infante be often bathed in water, in whiche hath ben sodden the head and the feete of a weather, so long tyll the fleshe part from the bones of his owne accorde, and euery tyme that the chyldre commeth forth of the bath, first let it be wyped and dyled cleane, and then annoynte it with this oyntmente.

Take freshe Butter, oyle of violetttes, and oyle of Roses, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of freshe Porke halfe an ounce, of white waxe two drammes, melt all these thynges together, and make an oyntment of it, annoyntyng therewith the chyldes body.

Item, take white waxe, Swines grease, sheepes tallowe, freshe Butter, melte all these thynges together, and strayne them, making of it an oyntment, and annoynte the chyldre withall once or twyse euerye daye. But the cheefe hope  
of

## The thirde booke.

of restauration muste be in light, restoratyue, and pure nourishing meates.

¶ Of lassitude, weerynesse, or heaurnesse of the chyldes body.

**S**ometymes it chaunceth that the chyldes members of the body be so feeble, as though it had the paulsie, so that with that partes of the bodye, the chyld can not helpe it selfe, neither can it lyft by the handes, armes, ne stand on the feete. If the chyld haue this disease whylest it sucketh, then let the Nurse be comforted, and strengthened with suche thynges the whiche haue bertue to heate and to drye. Also let the Nurse feede only vpon rosted and fryed meates, and that she forbear from mylke, fysh, and harde or salt powdred fleshe, for commonlye this disease spryngeth of colde and moyste humours, besieging the sinewes.

¶ farthermore, let not the Nurse vse any watered wine, or mixed, but mere and in his owne kynde, and let her bathe the chyld euer before she geue it sucke, after annoyntyng it with the oyle of Castorium, or the oyle of Costum, and let the chyld drynke euery day a quantitie of this electuarie folowynge.

Take Garden Mint, Cinamome, Cummin, drye Roses, Mastick, fenugreke, Valeriane, Amios, Doronicum, Zedoarium, Cloues, Saunders, Xiloadoes, of ech a dram, of Muske halfe a dramme, beate all those to powder, and confict them with clarified and depured honye, make thereof an electuarie,

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxviii.

electuarie, of the whiche euery day geue vnto the chylde the weyght of two pence to drynke with whyte wine. If the chylde haue this disease in euery part of his bodye, then take an ounce of waxe, and a dram of Euforbium, the which Euforbium ye shall beate in a mortar with .v. oz. .vi. droppes of oyle, tyll it be perfectly beaten, then temper them together ouer the fyre, adding ther vnto so much oyle as may be sufficient to make a searecloth, and lay it to the raynes of the backe.

¶ Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the Palsey.

If the chylde happen to be vexed with tremblyng or shaking of the body, or the partes thereof, so that ye feare the palsy of the same parte, or that the falling sicknesse shoulde ensue: then remedie it after this meanes. Take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Spykenarde, and temper them together, warming it, and therewith annoynt the backe or raynes, and the other shaking members: ye may also take any other oyle the which hath vertue to warme and calefie, as the oyle of Bayes, and such other.

Item, to bathe the chylde in the decoction of Rosemarie, Sage, Tyme, Hyslope, Sauery, Alexander, Smalage. &c. is very soueraigne.

If you can not cure it by this meanes, then demaunde farther counsaile of the Phisitians.

Si Agaynst



## The thirde booke.

Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stopping  
of the bryne.

**S**trangury, Dissury, and the difficultie in  
making of water, oftentimes chaunceth  
to children by reason of the stone, or aboun-  
dauce of grauell, other els many tymes of some  
other viscos, slimy, and flegmatike matter, in  
maner and fourme of dregs or ragges ouerwhar-  
ting and crossing the passage, whereby the brine  
shoulde passe forth, in such wyse, that (without  
great payne) the chylde can not make his water,  
and that yet but in small quantitie at once.

Whiche of these wayes so euer it come, it shal  
be verry good to bathe the chylde by to the Na-  
uyll in the decoction of Paritorie of the wall,  
Mallowes, Holpoke, Lyneseede, Lillie rootes,  
Fenegreke, and Sauery, other els with a sponge  
or double linnen cloth dypped therein, estones  
to foment the share and neather part of the belly  
agaynst the bladder.

But in men chylzen cheefely foment them  
on the straighes, betweene the fundement and  
the coddes, the whiche place in Latine is called  
Perineum, for there in them lyeth the necke of the  
bladder. After this bathyng or fomentation,  
dye the places fomented, and whilest they be yet  
redde with bathyng, annoynt them with the oyle  
of scorpions, to be hadde at the Apothecaries, or  
els the oyle called Petroleum.

And yf farther neede shall require it, ye may  
applie

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxix.

applie this plaster folowynge to the foresayde places. Take of Parsley, and of Alexander, of eche halfe an handfull, of Paritorie, Wallowes, Holyoke rootes, of eche an handfull, seethe these hearbes together in good stale ale, tyll such tyme as they be lost, then powze out the ale from them, and stampe the hearbes in a stone mortar, adding thereunto of the seedes of fenegreke and Line, of eche halfe an ounce, beyng fyrst beaten to subtyll powder.

Item of Cummin seede the wayght of foure grotes, beaten lyke wyse to fine powder, of the oyle of Scorpions, Petroleum, or other appertiffe oyle one ounce and an halfe, of all these well commixed together, make a plaster, and lay to the places aforesayde. To speake of any medicines to be administrated inwardes, it is but folly, for so muche as it is so harde to cause a chylde to take any thing within foorth.

This difficultie in makynge water, maye ensue by other meanes, whereof we neede not to speake at this tyme.

Of goggle eyes, or loking a squint.

If the chylde haue goggle eyes, or that it looke a squynt, then fyrst sette the cradell in suche a place, that the lyght maye come directly and ryght in the chylde's face, neyther in the one syde, neyther in the other, neither aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the lyght. Also marke on whiche side that the eyes do goggle, and let the lyght come vnto it on the

### The thirde booke.

contrary syde , so to returne the syght . And in the nyght season sette a candell on the contrary syde , so that by this meanes, the goglyng of the eyes may be returned to the ryght place . And further it shalbe good to hang clothes of diuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde , and specially of the colour of light greene , or yelowe, for the chyld shall haue pleasure to behold these straunge colours . And in returnyng the eye sight towarde suche thynges, it shalbe occasion to rectifie the syght agayne . And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme , of the diseases of chylzen after they be borne, makyng here an ende of this thirde booke for this tyme.

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxx.

Of such thinges the which shalbe entreated of in this fourth booke.

Cap. i.

**H**ere in this fourth booke (by the leaue of God) shall briefly be declared suche thynges whiche may farther or hynder the conception of man, whiche as it may be by dyuers meanes letted and hyndered, so also by many other wayes, it maye be farthered and amended. Also to knowe by certayne signes and tokens, whether the woman be conceaued or no, and whether the conception be male or female, and finally certayne remedies and medicines to farther and helpe conception, and thereafter we wyll (acordyng to our promyse in the Prologue) set forth certayne bellifying receptes, and so make an ende of this whole treatise.

S iii Of

## The fourth booke.

Of conception, and how many wayes it may  
be hindred or letted. Cap. ii.

**H**ere is nothing vnder heauen whi-  
che so manlyfeste and playnely doeth  
declare and shewe the magnificent  
mightinesse of the omnipotent ly-  
ving God, as doth the perpetuall  
and continuall generation and conception of ly-  
uyng thinges here in earth, by the whiche is sa-  
ued, prozaged, and augmented the kynde of all  
thinges. And where that this almyghtie Lorde  
and creature hath so institute and ordained, that  
no singular thing in it selfe (here vpon the earth)  
shoulde continually remayne and abide: yet hath  
he geuen from the beginning and instincted such  
a power and bertue vnto these mortal creatures,  
that they may engender and produce other lyke  
thinges vnto them selfe, and vnto their owne  
similitude, in the which alway is saued the seede  
of posteritie. Were not this prouision had by al-  
myghtie God, the nature and kinde of all maner  
of thinges woulde soone perishe and come to an  
ende, the which bertue and power of generation  
many times doth halte and misse, by defect and  
the contrary disposition in the partes generant:

As ye maye euidentlye see in the sowyng of  
corne and all other maner of seede, so that there  
be in all maner of generation thre principall  
partes concurrent to the same, the sower, the  
seede sowed, and the receptacle or place recea-  
uyng

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxi.

tyng and contaynyng the seede. If there be faulte in anye of these thre, then shall there neuer be due generation, vnto suche tyme as the faulte be remoued, or amended.

The earth vnto all seedes, is as a Mother and Nurse, contayning, clipping and embrasing them in her wombe, feeding and fosteryng them as the Mother doth the chylde in her bellye or Matrix, vntyll suche tyme as they come vnto the growth, quantitie, and perfection due vnto their nature and kinde: But yf this seede conceaued in the bowels of the earth, do not proue or fructifie, then be thou sure that eyther there is let in the sower, in the seede, or els in the earth.

The earth may be ouer wateryshe, dankishe, or ouer hoate and drye, or els full of stones, grauel, or other rubbishe, or ful of yll weedes, which may strangle and choke the good corne in his growyng: also the seede may be putrified, or otherwyle viciate and corrupted, and so the lyfe and spirite of it banished away and destroyed. The sower maye vnrordinately strewe and caste the seede on the earth. &c. So that yf there be let in none of these partes concurrent to generation, or that the letters be remoued and done awaye, then doubtlesse wyll ensue multiplicati- on and encrease of that kynde of the whiche the seede cometh, accordyng to the naturall enclination, the whiche almyghtie God hath enplanted and sette in the kynde of all thynges.

## The fourth booke.

Howe many wayes conception may be letted,  
and howe the causes may be knowen.

Capit.iii.

**E**uery thing then, the which doth encrease in this kind, must fyrst be conceaued in y<sup>e</sup> womb and Matrix of the Mother, whiche is apte and conuenient for the receate of such seede. And as I sayd before, as there may be defect and lacke in the Mother receauing the seede, so may there be fault and defect in the sower, and in the seede it selfe also.

And in women there may be foure generall causes, by the whiche the conception may be impedit and let: ouer muche caliditie or heate of the Matrix, ouermuch coldnes, ouermuch humiditie or moystnes, and ouermuch drynes. Any of these foure qualities exceedyng temperancie, may be sufficient causes to let due conception.

Wherefore the ryght excellent Phisition Hipocrates in the .v. booke of his Amphorismes saith: All suche women the whiche haue colde and dense Matrices, can not conceaue, and suche as haue moyste and waterythe Matrices can conceaue, for the power of the seede is extinguisht in it. Also hauing drye Matrices, conceaue not, for the seede perisheth for lacke of due nutriment and foode: but that Matrix the which hath all these qualities in temperauncie, that is fruitefull. This is Hipocrates saying, the which thynge  
also

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxii.

also may be well perceaued by a famillier example of the sowynge of corne.

For yf it be sowed in ouer colde places, suche as be in the partes of a countrey called Sithia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in suche places where a continuall snowe or froste, or where the Sunne doth not shyne, in these places the seede or grayne sowed, wyll neuer come to prooffe, nor fructifie, but through the behement coldnesse of the place, in the whiche it is conceaued, the lyfe and quicknesse of the grayne is vtterlye destroyed and adnihilate.

And farther as concernynge ouer muche humiditie, yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or maryshe and watery ground, the seede wyll perishe through the ouermuch abundance of water, whiche extinguissheth the liuelynesse and the naturall power of the grayne and seede.

Lyke wyse yf it be sowed in such a countrey or place where is ouer great heate, not tempered with water and rayne, or yf the yere be so drye, that there come no rayne at all to alaye the extreme and feruent heate of the Sunne: then shall the seede sowed, wyther and drye awaye, and the power of it be consumed and burnt.

Also yf it be sowed in drye places, where neuer commeth rayne, or on the sande, and grauely places, in suche a place the grayne can neuer take, ne proue, ne be conceaued in it, to come to any fruite or profite.

wherefore yf the Matrix be distemperd, by  
the



## The fourth booke.

the excesse of any of these foure qualities, then must ye reduce it againe to temperauncie, by such remedies as I shall shewe you hereafter. Likewise may there be defect and lacke in the man: as yf the seede be ouer hotte, the whiche the woman shall feele as it were burnyng hot, or to colde, the which she shall feele as it were in maner colde as yse, or to fluye or thinne. &c. Diuers other wayes also it may be letted, whiche shall not neede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceaue, the cause comming of ouermuch frigiditie or colde-nesse in the Matrix, that shall she know by these tokens. She shall feele great colde about the sides, the raynes of the backe, and the Matrix, her brine shall appeare whyte and thinnishe, and sometimes also somewhat spisse and thicke, and all maner of colde thinges shall noy her, hotte thinges shall greatly comfort her.

But yf it come by ouermuche humiditie of the Matrix, that shall she knowe by these signes. If the bodye of her be of a fat & grosse disposition, yf with her flowres issue forth at the begynnyng and the latter ende of them certayne viscos and watery substaunce, and that her brine be white, thicke, and sometyme as it were mylke. Also that she feele great colde and payne about the Matrix and priuie partes, and much dolour in her sides, and in the raynes of her backe.

And when ouermuch heate or dryth in the Matrix is cause of the hynderaunce of conception, then is the brine hye coloured, redde, or yelowe,  
lowe,

lowe, beyng thinne, with certayne motes appearing in the water: the woman hath greate thyrst, and bytter rysing oz belchynges out of the stomacke into the mouth. And many tymes they that are in this case, are very spare and leane in all their bodye, hauing also but small quantitie of flowres, the whiche thyng maye happen eyther by ouer muche watche, oz ouer-much fastyng, labour, trauaile, sorowe, sicknesse. &c. But suche women whiche naturally are thus spare and leane, may very hardlye be brought to a temperancie agayne, and be made apt to conceaue. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, to knowe whiche qualitie by his excellence causeth sterilitie. Nowe wyll we shew how it shalbe knowen, whether lacke of conception be in the woman, oz els in the man, and how to knowe whether the woman be conceaued oz no, accordyng to the mynde of ryght expert Physicians.

**Howe to knowe Whether lacke of conception be of the woman oz of the man, and howe it may be perceaued whether she be conceaued oz no. Cap. iiii.**



If ye be desirous to know whether the man oz the woman be hinderance in conception: Let eche of them take of wheate

## The fourth booke.

Wheate and Barlye cornes, and of Beanes of eche .viii. the which they shall suffer to be steeped in their severall byrne the space of twentie and foure houres: then take two pottes, such as they set Beliflowres in, fill them with good earth, and in the one let be sette the Wheate, Barlye, and Beanes, steeped in the mans water, and in the other the Wheate, Barlye, and Beanes steeped in the womans water, and euery moorning the space of .viii. or .x. dayes, let eche of them with their proper byrne water the saide seedes sowen in the foresayde pottes: and marke whose potte doth proue, and the seedes therein contayned doth growe, in that partie is not the lacke of conception: and see that there come no other water or rayne on the pottes: but trust not much this farre set experiment.

Item, accordyng to Hipocrates wytyng, yf ye wyll know whether the faulte be in the woman or no, then let the woman receaue into her body vnderneath, beyng well and closely closed round about, the fume of some odoriferous perfume, as Laudanum, Storax calamite, Lignum Aloes, Muske, Ambre, and such other: and yf the odour and sauour of suche thinges ascende thoro we her body by vnto her nose, ye shall vnderstande that sterilitie commeth not of the womans parte: yf not, then is the defect in her.

Item, yf the take Garlicke beyng pilled out of the huskes, and conuaye of it into the priuie partes, and yf the sent of it ascende vppe thoro we the body vnto the nose, the woman is faultlesse,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxiij.

faultlesse: yf not, then is there lacke in her. These tokens, although they haue a certayne reason and appearaunce, yet be they not alwayes infallible, but only likely.

Whether she be conceaued alredy or no, ye shal knowe by these signes. First the flowres issue not in so great quantitie as they are wont, but ware lesse and lesse, and in maner nothyng at all commeth from them. Also the brestes begin to ware rounder, harder, and styffer then they were wont to be: the woman shall long after certayne thynges, otherwys then she was vsed to do before that tyme. Also her bryne wareth spysse and thyclyshe by retention of the superfluities. Also the woman feeleth her Matrix very fastly and closely shutte, insonauche that as Hipocrates sayth, the poynt of a needle may scarse enter.

To knowe whether the woman be conceaued, or no.

Item, to knowe whether she be conceaued or no, accordyng to Hipocrates mynde, in the .v. of his Ampho. Geue vnto the woman when she is goyng to bedde, a quantitie of Mellicratum to drynke, and yf after that drynke she feele great payne, gnawynge, and tumblyng in her bellye, then be ye sure that she is conceaued. This Mellicratum is a drynke, made of one part wine, another part water, sodden together, with a quantitie of hony.

But yf ye be desyrous to knowe whether the conception be man or woman, then let a droppe of her mylke or twayne be mylked on a smothe glasse, or a bryght knyfe, other els on the nayle  
of

## The fourth booke.

of one of her fyngers, and yf the mylke flewe and spreade abrode vpon it by and by, then is it a woman chylde: but yf the drop of Mylke continue and stande styll vpon that the which it is mylked on, then is it a signe of a man chylde.

Item if it be a male, then shal the woman with chylde be well colored, and lyght in goyng, her belly rounde, bigger towarde the right syde, then the left (for commonly the man chylde lyeth in the ryght side, the woman in the lefte side) and in the tyme of her bearyng she shal better digest and lyke her meate, her stomacke nothyng so queesye ne feble.

Of certayne remedies and medicines which may farther the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.



A sterilitie then for the most part ensueth and commeth of the distemperauncie of one of these foure fornamed qualities, wherefore the remedie and cure of the same when it chaunceth, muste be done by such thinges the which haue contrary power & operation to the excessiue qualitie, for by that shall it be reduced to his temperauncie agayne.

As yf that coldnesse and moistnesse excedding temperauncie in the Matrix be occasion of sterilitie, then muste she applie suche thinges to that place the whiche be of nature hot and drye, the whiche may calisie and warme the place, and also drye by the yll moistnes and humours conteyned

ned in the same, hyndering conception.

And for because that the moſte generall and common cauſe of ſterilitie doth proceede of colde, wateryſhe, and flegmaticke humours, whiche bedea wyng the inner ſides and holonneſſe of the Matrix, with the porte and mouth thereof alſo, cauſeth that the ſeede ſent from the man into the womans wombe or Matrix, can not there remaine ne cleaue: neither is the mouth or port of the wombe apte or able to cloſe it ſelfe ſufficiently after the reception of the ſeede, the ſlewnie and ſlime humours withſtandyng it, the which beſſe they be diſcuſſed, or dyled away, the ſeede alway ſlippeth and ſlideth forth as faſte as it entreteth in.

Wherefore to remedie and to do away the foreſayde impediment, ye ſhall vſe the meanes whiche foloweth.

Fyrſte, within a day or two after the womans Termes be paſſed, let her by the aduyce of ſome Phiſition take a purgation, whiche may purge ſlewnie and wateryſhenes, and then the next or the thirde day after, let her ſit in a bath by almoſte to the Nauill, in the whiche bath ye ſhall decocte and ſeethe theſe hearbes folowyng. Take of Bay leaues, Malloves, redde Myntes, Mirtilles, Camomell, Moiozan, Marygoldes, of eche an handfull, of Sage three handfulls, of Mercurie and Brankurſin of eche two handfulls, ſeethe all theſe hearbes together in fayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water, and the other halfe redde wine,

## The fourth booke.

Wine, in this bath let her remayne the space of a good halfe houre, and a litle before that she come forth of the bath, geue her to drinke of this electuarie folowng.

Take of Spyke, Nutmegges, Cloues, Gallyngall, Cinamome, and long pepper, of eche the wayght of a grote, of Annise seede the wayght of two grottes, of Sage leaues dried the wayght of three grottes, all these thynges (eche by them selues) beaten to small powder, temper them altogether in so much pure claryfied Honye as maye be sufficient to receaue all the powder, other els commixt with this powder so muche fine Suger as the wayght of the powder amounteth vnto, whereof ye shall geue vnto her at once the wayght of two grottes, with .viii. ix. oz. x. sponesfulles of good whyte oz claret wine, other els with good Maluesey oz Muscadell.

And all this must be done eyther fastyng in the mornynge one houre before breakefast oz dyner, other els .v. oz .vi. houres after dyner, so that it be not done vppon a full stomacke. But yf ye take the bath and the electuarium in the mornynge, then at nyght three oz foure houres after supper, let her receaue vnderneath her clothes, the vapour of these thynges folowng into the priuie. Take of Lauender dried, of vnset Tyme, Bay berries, Iuie leaues, of eche halfe a litle handfull, of whyte frankencense the wayght of foure grottes, of Sage dried, oz other two litle handfulls of Rosemarye leaues

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvi.

leaves one handfull, seethe these together in fayre water, and when they be perfectly sodden, then let the woman set her selfe ouer the vapour thereof, sitting groueling, other els set on a couer made for the nonce with a tunnell or cunduite, thoro'we the which the vapour may be directed into the womans priuie passage, the neere thereby, that the vertue thereof may approche vnto the wombe or wombe port.

Ye may also in the same water dyppe wooll, or els fyne linnen cloutes, and so conuay it into the priuie passage, there to remayne the space of one or two houres. This bath, electuarie, and vapour, I counsell them that haue neede to vse them the space of thre dayes continually, and then the thyrde nyght to companie with her husbände, and by the grace of GOD she shalbe spedde. There be sometymes, that with the vse of the bath onlpe, or the electuarie alone, eyther the vapour, without any farther remedye haue ben aptified to conception, but who that vseth it as is aboue mentioned, worketh the surer way.

These shalbe sufficient remedies for want of conception, proceeding of colde, moyste, and flegmatike humidities. Nowe yf it come by any distemperancie in heate and dryth: then let her be purged of coller, or other vnkynnd heate bred in the body, by thynges apt and meete for that purpose, and then afterwarde to vse bathes, electuaries, and vapours, of moderately cooling thynges, as of Roses, Violettes, Letuse, Purs-  
T i layne,



## The fourth booke.

Iayne, Plantaine, and dyuers other.

But forasmuch that moſte commonly the brittle aptitude of conception (in women hauyng theyr health) ſpryngeth of the ſuperfluitie of colde and moyſt humours (whereof we haue alreſſe ſpoken) therefore all other impedimentes leſte a part, ye ſhall holde ye content with this for this tyme. For yf I woulde make mention of all the occasions whereby conception may be let or impedit, then ſhoulde I here alleadge and bryng in all the diſeaſes that may happen to a woman in that partes, with the remedies thereof, whiche were a long worke, and not proper for this volume.

In this .vi. Chapter is entreated of diuers bellyſifying receptes, as ye may hereafter reade.

**T**H E embellishing or bellyſying medicines whereof I entende to ſpeake here, be not to be vnderſtanden to be of that ſort, whereby any Adſtitious or outwarde forraigne beautie or ſet colours ſhoulde be acquired or gotten, the which farre ſet & damnable curioſitie, I doubt not but that all honeſt and vertuous ſadde women do vtterly abhorre and contemne: but here myne only meanyng is, to ſhewe howe to remove certayne blemyſhes, and as it were weedes of the bodye, through the whiche many tymes the naturall beautie thereof is obſcured and defaced. For as in a fayre Garden, be it neuer ſo beauti-

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvii.

beautifull, yet yf it be not regarded and looked vnto, the weedes entermynglyng them selues among the good hearbes, wyll defourme and emperyshe the good grace of them. For in the earth, be it neuer so well diligented and pyked, yet alwayes therein wyll remayne some sparkes and seedes of vnlooked for weedes, the whiche euer when tyme or season serueth, nature thrusteth forth.

Lyke wyse in the bodye of man, among the good and necessary humours, is some sparke or qualitie of yll and not necessarye humours, with the whiche nature beyng offended and cloyed, expelleth and dzyueth them forth sometymes into one place, and sometymes into another, accordyng to the aptitude or feeblenesse in resistance of the place receauyng it, and the force or violencie of nature (therewith greued) sendyng it, so that the superfluities founde in the bypper part and face or superfcie of the skynne, ensueeth by the superfluitie and dominion of lyke matter conteyned and commixed in the vaynes among the blood, and is a great euidence and testimonie thereof. But here I wyll not speake of all kyndes of vtter diseases spryngyng of this inwarde corrupted humours, but onlye of suche thynges as commonlye chaunce to men and women without any imperysment of theyr health.

As for example, fyrste I wyll brievely declare the fylthynesse of the head, called in latin Perrigo,

## The fourth booke.

In Englishē, the Dandruffe of the head, the which is, when that in kembryng and cratchyng of the head, certayne whyte scales, as it were branne, falleth of from the head, and lyeth very thicke among and vnder the heere.

¶ Of the causes and remedies of Dandruffe of the head.

**T**HE cause of this Dandruffe commeth by aboundaunce of fleumatike humours, commixt with the blood, the which dayly and hourelly by vncessible sweatynge, euaporateth and issueth forth of the pores, in the skinne that couereth the panbone, and as fast as it issueth forth, dryeth on the vtter superficie of the skinne, and there remainyng and gatheryng together, becommeth euery day more and more, therto greatly helpyng the forest of heere which couereth, harbereth and retayneth such superfluities, more in those places then in any other where no heere groweth. And most commonlye they that haue blacke heere, haue more store of Dandruffe then other. This humour suffered ouerlong to raigne on the head, destroyeth and corrupteth the rootes of the heeres, makyng them to fall of in great plentie, and specially in kembryng. And although this superfluitie be not cleanly, yet notwithstanding it shall be no wisdom for me to teache, ne any other herewith encombred, to learne howe to stoppe it, for feare of farther inconueniences, but onely I counsell you once in ten dayes at the least, to  
washe

## The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxviii.

washe and scoure the head cleane with good lye, wherein let be steeped in a linnen bagge of Annis seede, Cummin, dried Rosemarie, Fenugreke, and the ryndes of Pomegranate, of eche lyke much: and beware that after the washynge of your head ye take no colde, before the head be perfectly dyled.

And whereas some say, that they whiche vse ofte washynge of theyr heades, shalbe very prone to head ache: that is not true, but only in suche that after they haue ben washed, roll by theyr hayre (beyng yet wette) about theyr heades, the colde whereof is daungerous to bryng them to Catarrhes and poses, with other inconueniencies. Wherefore all diligence must be had, that the head may be exactly well dyled with warme clothes, whylest the head is yet hotte of the washynge, and then neuer feare no inconueniencies, but rather conuenience and commoditie: and let this be done also fastyng in the mornynge, or els one houre before supper, or v. houres after supper: this ofte washynge shall purgfy the skynne of the head, and stedfaste the hayre from falling, leuiate and lyghten the head, with all the senses therein conteyned, and greatlye comfort the braynes.

To take away hayre from places where  
it is vnseemely.

**I**tem, sometymes hayre groweth in places vnseemely, and out of order: as in many maydens and women the hayre groweth so lowe

## The fourth booke.

in the foreheades and the temples, that it disfigureth them: for this ye maye vse three wayes to remoue them, eyther to plucke bp one after another with pincers, such as many women haue for the nonce, eyther els with this lye folowynge. Take newe burnt Lyme foure ounces, of Arsenicke an ounce, steepe both these in a pynt of water the space of two dayes, and then boyle it from a pynt to the halfe.

And to prooue whether it be perfect, dyppe a feather therein, and yf the plume of the feather depart of easlyly, then is it strong enough: with this water then annoynt so farre the place that ye woulde haue bare from hayre, as it lyketh you, and within a quarter of an houre plucke at the hayres, and they wyll folowe, and then washe that place muche with water wherein branne hath ben steeped: and that done, annoynt the place with the whyte of a newe layde egge and oyle Oliue, beaten and mixt together with the iuyce of Singrene or Purslane, to alaye the heate engendred of the foresayde lye. The thyrde way to remoue hayre, is with a plaster made of very drye pytche, and vpon leather applyed to the place, the hayres beyng fyrste shauen, or cutte as neare as can be with a payre of Cyfers.

Nowe when the hayres be bp by the rootes, then to let them that they growe no more: take of Alome the wayght of a groate, and dissolue it in two spoonefulles of the iuyce of Nyghtshade, or of Henbane, and therewithall annoynte the place

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxix.

place two or three tymes euery day, the space of  
ix. or. x. dayes, and hayze wyll growe no more in  
that place.

To do away Frekens or other spottes in  
the face.

**T**Hese frekens and such other spottes in the  
face or other where in the bodye, may be  
taken away by often annoyntyng them  
with the oyle of Carter, to be founde alwayes  
at the Apothecaries, and surely that oyle is so-  
ueraigne for that purpose.

Item, take Eleborus, and seeth of it an ounce  
in halfe a pynt of strong whyte wineger, tyll  
halfe be consumed, then myrte there with Hony  
three spoonefulles, and the wayght of a peny of  
Mercury sublimid, (to be had at the Apotheca-  
ries) and seeth these together agayne tyll it be-  
come thicke: with this annoynt the frekens,  
and it wyll destroy them. This is also very good  
for the Morphewe, and other discoloration or  
staynyng of the skynne.

To destroy Wartes and suche lyke excrescences  
on the face or els where.

**F**OR this purpose nothyng is so excellent  
as euery day once, the space of three or foure  
dayes, to droppe one droppe of strong wa-  
ter, called Aqua fortis, on them, for this destroy-  
eth them in very short tyme.

Item, the iuyce of a red Onion, and the iuyce  
of Marygoldes is very good for the same.

Item, dissolue a lytle Mercury sublimid in  
fayze

## The fourth booke.

sayre water, and therewith drop the Wartes, and they wyll soone wither and consume away.

To cleare and clarifie the skyn in the handes, face, or other part of the body.

**F**OR this is nothyng better then to take one spoonefull of the oyle of Carter, and sixe spoonefulles of water, with these comixed together, washe the handes, face, and other partes, for it scoureth, cleanseth, and purifyeth the skynne soueraignely, and wyll suffer no fylthynesse to remayne in the pores of the fleshe, and this oyle of Carter is made on this wyse.

Take wine lyes dyed, the whiche the Golde-smithes do call Arguyl, and beate it into powder, and then fyll thereof a Goldesmythes crudible, and set it among hoate coales, tyll the Arguyl begyn to waxe blacke: then take it out of the fyre and let it coole, and bynde it in a linnen cloute, and hange it a lyttle ouer the vapour of hoate boylng water: that done, hange this cloute with the Arguyl in a glasse with a broade mouth, so that the bagge or cloute touche not the bottome of the glasse, and the water or oyle called Carter wyll droppe downe a lyttle and lyttle: and the sooner, yf it stande in a very colde and moyste sellar.

Item, to scoure the handes and the body, some be to washe theyr handes with the powder of Dresse, which is the roote of the blew flouredeluce, and some with Beane floure.

Item, the yolke and whyte of egges is good for that purpose, and so is honny.

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxx.

To souple and mollifie the ruggednesse  
of the skynne.

**A**nnoynt the skyn with the oyle of sweete Al-  
mondes, the same is verie good also for  
chypnynges of the lippes or handes.

Item, Deere suet is verie proper for the same  
purpose, especially beyng well washed and tem-  
pered with Rose water, whetein hath ben dis-  
solued two or thzee graynes of pure Muske.

¶ Agaynst sodayne rysynges of pynples, thzough vn-  
kynde heate, in the face or els where.

**T**Ake the whyte of an egge, and beate it well  
with a spoone, and then therwith commixe  
two spoonefuls of Salet oyle, one spoone-  
full of Rose water, another of the iuyce of So-  
rell, & halfe a lyttle spoonefull of Vineger, here-  
with annoynt the pynples and rysynges.

To kepe and pteserue the teeth cleane.

**F**irst yf they be verie yelow and filthy, or blac-  
kythe, let a Barber scoure, rubbe, and pycke  
them cleane and whyte, then after to mayn-  
teyne them cleane, it shalbe verie good to rubbe  
them euerye day with the roote of a Mallowe,  
and to pycke them cleane that no meate remayne  
and putrisie betweene the teeth.

Item, take of the small whyte pybble stones  
which be founde by the water sides, and beate  
thē in verie small powder, hereof take an ounce,  
and of Masticke one dram, myngle them toge-  
ther



## The fourth booke.

ther, and with this powder once in. xiiii. dayes rub exactly your teeth, and this shall kepe your teeth fayre and whyte, but beware ye touche not, ne bere the gummes therewithall.

Item, to stable and stedfaste tye teethe, and to kepe the gummes in good case, it shall be verie good euery day in the mornynge, to washe well the mouth with red wine.

### Of stynkyng breath.

**S**tinck of the breath commeth eyther by occasion bread in the mouth, or els in the stomack.

If it come from the stomacke, then the body must be purged by the farther aduylse of a Phisitition. If it be engendred in the mouth only, then mooste commonly it commeth of some rotten and corrupted hollowe teeth, whiche in this case must be plucked out, and the gummes well scoured and washed with Vineger wherein hath ben sodden Cloues and Nutmegges. The cleanlye keepynge of the teeth doth conferre muche to the sauerinesse of the mouth.

### Of the ranke sauour of the armeholes.

**T**his vice in many persons is verie tedious and lothsome: the remedie whereof is, to purge fyrste the colericke and egre humours, originall causers of the same, and afterwarde to washe the armeholes oftentymes with the water wherein Wormwood hath ben sodden together with Camomell, and a lytle quantitie of Alooe.

Item,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxxi.

Item Authours do wryte, that the rootes  
of Artichantes (the pyth pyked out) sodden in  
whyte wine & so drunke, doth cleanse the stench  
of the armeholes and oyer partes of the bodye  
by the brine. For (as Galen also doth testifie)  
he prouoketh copie and plentie of stynkyng and  
vnsauerie brine from all partes of the bodye, the  
whiche proprietie it hath by speciall gyfte, and  
not only by his hoate qualitie. And thus  
here I make an ende of this fourth  
and last booke.

FINIS.

1565.



